

OFFICIAL STATEMENT
Dated August 16, 2018

NEW ISSUE – BOOK ENTRY ONLY

Ratings: Moody's: Aaa/A2
PSF: Guaranteed
(See "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL
FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM" and "OTHER
PERTINENT INFORMATION - Municipal Bond Rating" herein)

In the opinion of Orrick, Herrington & Sutcliffe LLP, Bond Counsel, based upon an analysis of existing laws, regulations, rulings and court decisions, and assuming, among other matters, the accuracy of certain representations and compliance with certain covenants, interest on the Bonds is excluded from gross income for federal income tax purposes under Section 103 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986. In the further opinion of Bond Counsel, interest on the Bonds is not a specific preference item for purposes of the federal alternative minimum tax. Bond Counsel expresses no opinion regarding any other tax consequences related to the ownership or disposition of, or the amount, accrual or receipt of interest on, the Bonds. See "TAX MATTERS" herein.

THE BONDS HAVE BEEN DESIGNATED AS "QUALIFIED TAX-EXEMPT OBLIGATIONS" FOR FINANCIAL INSTITUTIONS



\$7,350,000
SNOOK INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
(A political subdivision of the State of Texas located in Burleson County, Texas)
UNLIMITED TAX SCHOOL BUILDING BONDS, SERIES 2018

Dated Date: September 1, 2018
(Interest to accrue from the date of initial delivery)

Due: February 15, as shown on page ii

The Snook Independent School District Unlimited Tax School Building Bonds, Series 2018 (the "Bonds") are direct obligations of the Snook Independent School District (the "District") and are payable from an annual ad valorem tax levied, without legal limit as to rate or amount, upon all taxable property within the District. The Bonds are being issued pursuant to the Constitution and general laws of the State of Texas (the "State"), particularly Sections 45.001 and 45.003(b)(1), Texas Education Code, as amended, an election held in the District on May 5, 2018 (the "Election"), and an order authorizing the issuance of the Bonds (the "Order"), adopted by the Board of Trustees (the "Board") of the District on August 15, 2018. See "THE BONDS – Authority for Issuance" herein.

Interest on the Bonds will accrue from their date of initial delivery (the "Delivery Date"), will be payable until stated maturity or prior redemption on February 15 and August 15 of each year, commencing February 15, 2019, and will be calculated on the basis of a 360-day year of twelve 30-day months. The Bonds will be issued as fully registered obligations in principal denominations of \$5,000, or integral multiples thereof within a stated maturity. The Bonds will be issued in book-entry form only and when issued will be registered in the name of Cede & Co., as nominee of The Depository Trust Company ("DTC"), New York, New York. DTC will act as securities depository (the "Securities Depository"). Book-entry interests in the Bonds will be made available for purchase in the principal amount of \$5,000 or any integral multiple thereof. Purchasers of the Bonds ("Beneficial Owners") will not receive physical delivery of certificates representing their interest in the Bonds purchased. So long as DTC or its nominee is the registered owner of the Bonds, principal of and interest on the Bonds will be payable by the Paying Agent/Registrar, initially UMB Bank, N.A., Austin, Texas, to the Securities Depository, which will in turn remit such principal and interest to its participants, which will in turn remit such principal and interest to the Beneficial Owners of the Bonds. See "BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM" herein.

Proceeds from the sale of the Bonds will be used (i) for the purposes of constructing, acquiring, renovating, and equipping school buildings, and (ii) to pay for professional services associated with the costs of issuance of the Bonds. See "PLAN OF FINANCING – Sources and Uses" herein.

The District has applied for and received conditional approval from the Texas Education Agency for the payment of principal of and interest on the Bonds to be guaranteed under the Permanent School Fund Guarantee Program which guarantee will automatically become effective when the Attorney General of Texas approves the Bonds. See "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM" herein.

For Maturity Schedule see page -ii- herein

The Bonds are offered for delivery when, as and if issued and received by the initial purchaser named below (the "Underwriter") and are subject to the approving opinion of the Attorney General of the State of Texas and the approval of certain legal matters by Orrick, Herrington & Sutcliffe LLP, Austin, Texas, Bond Counsel (see "LEGAL MATTERS"; "APPENDIX D – FORM OF BOND COUNSEL'S OPINION" hereto) Certain matters will be passed upon for the Underwriter by Bracewell LLP, Austin, Texas, as counsel to the Underwriter. It is expected that the Bonds will be available for delivery through the services of DTC on or about September 11, 2018.

FTN FINANCIAL CAPITAL MARKETS

\$7,350,000

SNOOK INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
(A political subdivision of the State of Texas located in Burleson County, Texas)

UNLIMITED TAX SCHOOL BUILDING BONDS, SERIES 2018

MATURITY SCHEDULE
CUSIP No. ⁽¹⁾ Prefix 833306

Stated Maturity (February 15)	Principal Amount	Interest Rate	Initial Yield	CUSIP No. Suffix ⁽¹⁾
2019	\$65,000	2.000%	1.510%	GW7
2020	110,000	2.000	1.710	GX5
2021	155,000	2.000	1.870	GY3
2022	155,000	3.000	2.020	GZ0
2023	160,000	3.000	2.130	HA4
2024	165,000	3.000	2.270	HB2
2025	170,000	3.000	2.410	HC0
2026	175,000	3.000	2.550	HD8
2027	180,000	4.000	2.620	HE6
2028	190,000	4.000	2.680	HF3

(Interest to accrue from the initial date of delivery)

TERM BONDS

				CUSIP⁽¹⁾
\$400,000	4.00%	Term Bond due February 15, 2030	Priced to yield 2.810%⁽²⁾	833306HG1
\$430,000	4.00%	Term Bond due February 15, 2032	Priced to yield 2.940%⁽²⁾	833306HH9
\$470,000	4.00%	Term Bond due February 15, 2034	Priced to yield 3.070%⁽²⁾	833306HJ5
\$505,000	4.00%	Term Bond due February 15, 2036	Priced to yield 3.150%⁽²⁾	833306HK2
\$550,000	4.00%	Term Bond due February 15, 2038	Priced to yield 3.260%⁽²⁾	833306HL0
\$590,000	4.00%	Term Bond due February 15, 2040	Priced to yield 3.360%⁽²⁾	833306HP1
\$980,000	4.00%	Term Bond due February 15, 2043	Priced to yield 3.490%⁽²⁾	833306HM8
\$1,900,000	4.00%	Term Bond due February 15, 2048	Priced to yield 3.690%⁽²⁾	833306HN6

The Bonds maturing on and after February 15, 2028, are subject to redemption prior to maturity at the option of the District, in whole or in part, in principal amounts of \$5,000 or any integral multiple thereof, on February 15, 2027 or any date thereafter, at the par value thereof plus accrued interest to the date of redemption. See "THE BONDS – Optional redemption Provisions of the Bonds" herein. Additionally, Bonds maturing on February 15 in the years 2030, 2032, 2034, 2036, 2038, 2040, 2043, and 2048 (the "Term Bonds") are subject to mandatory sinking fund redemption. See "THE BONDS – Mandatory Sinking Fund Redemption."

⁽¹⁾ CUSIP numbers are included solely for the convenience of the owners of the Bonds. CUSIP is a registered trademark of the American Bankers Association. CUSIP data herein is provided by CUSIP Global Services, managed by S&P Global Market Intelligence on behalf of The American Bankers Association. This data is not intended to create a database and does not serve in any way as a substitute for the CUSIP Services. None of the Underwriter, the District, or the Financial Advisor is responsible for the selection or correctness of the CUSIP numbers set forth herein.

⁽²⁾ Yield shown to first call date of February 15, 2027.

**SNOOK INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
10110 FM 2155
Snook, Texas 77878**

BOARD OF TRUSTEES

<u>Name</u>	<u>Position</u>	<u>Term Expiration</u>	<u>Occupation</u>
Kristine Brisco	President	May 2020	Business Administration
James Faust	Vice-President	May 2019	Plant Chemist
Stacey Slovacek	Secretary	May 2021	Postal Supervisor
Justin Hruska	Board Member	May 2021	Pipeline Tech
Earl Munson	Board Member	May 2019	Retired
Cameron Schluens	Board Member	May 2021	Accountant
Melvin Schoeneman	Board Member	May 2020	Retired

ADMINISTRATION – FINANCE CONNECTED

<u>Name</u>	<u>Position</u>
Brenda Krchnak	Superintendent
Darrell St. Clair	Business Manager

CONSULTANTS AND ADVISORS

<u>Name</u>	<u>Position</u>
Auditors	Belt Harris Pechacek, LLP, Bellville, Texas
Bond Counsel	Orrick, Herrington & Sutcliffe LLP, Austin, Texas
Financial Advisor	Live Oak Public Finance, LLC, Austin, Texas

For Additional Information Contact:

Darrell St. Clair
Snook Independent School District
10110 FM 2155
Snook, Texas 77878
(979) 272-8307
stclaird@snookisd.com

Christian Merritt
Live Oak Public Finance, LLC
915 W. Annie Street
Austin, Texas 78704
(512) 726-5547
cmerritt@liveoakpf.com

USE OF INFORMATION IN THE OFFICIAL STATEMENT

No dealer, broker, salesman, or other person has been authorized by the District to give any information or to make any representation with respect to the Bonds, other than as contained in this Official Statement, and if given or made, such other information or representations must not be relied upon as having been authorized by either of the foregoing.

This Official Statement, which includes the cover page and the Appendices hereto, does not constitute an offer to sell or a solicitation of an offer to buy, nor shall there be any sale of the Bonds by any person, in any jurisdiction in which it is unlawful for such person to make such offer, solicitation, or sale. The information set forth herein has been obtained from sources which are believed to be reliable but is not guaranteed as to accuracy or completeness and is not to be construed as a representation by the Underwriter.

The information and expressions of opinion herein are subject to change without notice, and neither the delivery of this Official Statement nor any sale made hereunder shall under any circumstances create any implication that there has been no change in the information or opinions set forth herein after the date of this Official Statement. See "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM – PSF Continuing Disclosure Undertaking" and "CONTINUING DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION" for a description of the Texas Education Agency's ("TEA") and the District's undertakings to provide certain information on a continuing basis.

The Underwriter provided the following sentence for inclusion in this Official Statement. The Underwriter reviewed the information in this Official Statement in accordance with, and as part of its responsibilities to investors under the federal securities laws as applied to the facts and circumstances of this transaction, but the Underwriter does not guarantee the accuracy or completeness of such information.

The Financial Advisor provided the following sentence for inclusion in this Official Statement. The Financial Advisor reviewed the information in this Official Statement in accordance with, and as part of, their responsibilities to the District and to investors under the federal securities laws as applied to the facts and circumstances of this transaction, but the Financial Advisor does not guarantee the accuracy or completeness of such information.

THE BONDS ARE EXEMPT FROM REGISTRATION WITH THE UNITED STATES SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION AND CONSEQUENTLY HAVE NOT BEEN REGISTERED THEREWITH. THE REGISTRATION, QUALIFICATION, OR EXEMPTION OF THE BONDS IN ACCORDANCE WITH APPLICABLE SECURITIES LAW PROVISIONS OF THE JURISDICTIONS IN WHICH THESE BONDS HAVE BEEN REGISTERED, QUALIFIED, OR EXEMPTED SHOULD NOT BE REGARDED AS A RECOMMENDATION FOR THE PURCHASE THEREOF.

IN CONNECTION WITH THIS OFFERING, THE UNDERWRITER MAY OVER-ALLOT OR EFFECT TRANSACTIONS WHICH STABILIZE THE MARKET PRICE OF THIS ISSUE AT A LEVEL ABOVE THAT WHICH MIGHT OTHERWISE PREVAIL IN THE OPEN MARKET. SUCH STABILIZING, IF COMMENCED, MAY BE DISCONTINUED AT ANY TIME.

None of the District, the Financial Advisor, or the Underwriter make any representation or warranty with respect to the information contained in this Official Statement regarding The Depository Trust Company ("DTC") or its book-entry-only system described under the caption "BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM" or the affairs of the TEA described under "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM" as such information has been provided by DTC and the TEA, respectively.

The agreements of the District and others related to the Bonds are contained solely in the contracts described herein. Neither this Official Statement, nor any other statement made in connection with the offer or sale of the Bonds, is to be construed as constituting an agreement with the purchasers of the Bonds. INVESTORS SHOULD READ THE ENTIRE OFFICIAL STATEMENT, INCLUDING ALL APPENDICES ATTACHED HERETO, TO OBTAIN INFORMATION ESSENTIAL TO MAKING AN INFORMED INVESTMENT DECISION WITH RESPECT TO THE BONDS.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

USE OF INFORMATION IN THE OFFICIAL STATEMENT	iv	The Texas Tax Code as Applied to the District	33
TABLE OF CONTENTS	v	STATE AND LOCAL FUNDING OF SCHOOL DISTRICTS IN TEXAS	34
OFFICIAL STATEMENT SUMMARY INFORMATION ..	vi	Litigation Relating to the Texas Public School Finance System	34
INTRODUCTION.....	1	Possible Effects of Litigation and Changes in Law on District Bonds	34
PLAN OF FINANCING	1	CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM.....	35
Purpose.....	1	Local Funding for School Districts	35
Sources and Uses of Funds.....	1	State Funding for School Districts	36
THE BONDS	2	2006 Legislation	37
General Description	2	2017 Legislation	37
Authority for Issuance	2	Wealth Transfer Provisions	38
Security for Payment.....	2	THE SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM AS APPLIED TO THE DISTRICT.....	38
Permanent School Fund Guarantee.....	2	TAX RATE LIMITATIONS	39
Optional Redemption Provisions of the Bonds.....	2	DEBT LIMITATIONS	39
Mandatory Sinking Fund Redemption	3	EMPLOYEE BENEFITS, RETIREMENT PLAN AND OTHER POST-EMPLOYMENT BENEFITS	40
Notice of Redemption.....	4	INVESTMENT POLICIES	40
Defeasance.....	4	Legal Investments	40
Amendments.....	5	Investment Policies.....	42
Default and Remedies.....	5	Additional Provisions	42
Payment Record	6	LEGAL MATTERS.....	42
Legality.....	6	Legal Opinion	42
Delivery	6	Litigation.....	43
Future Issues	6	TAX MATTERS	43
REGISTRATION, TRANSFER AND EXCHANGE	7	LEGAL INVESTMENTS AND ELIGIBILITY TO SECURE PUBLIC FUNDS IN TEXAS	44
Paying Agent/Registrar	7	CONTINUING DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION.....	45
Successor Paying Agent/Registrar.....	7	Annual Reports.....	45
Record Date.....	7	Notice of Certain Events.....	45
Registration, Transferability and Exchange.....	7	Availability of Information from MSRB	46
Limitation on Transfer of Bonds	7	Limitations and Amendments	46
Replacement Bonds.....	8	Compliance with Prior Agreements	46
BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM.....	8	OTHER PERTINENT INFORMATION.....	46
Use of Certain Terms in Other Sections of This Official Statement.....	10	Authenticity of Financial Information.....	46
Effect of Termination of Book-Entry-Only System	10	Registration and Qualification of Bonds for Sale	46
THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM	10	Municipal Bond Rating.....	47
AD VALOREM TAX PROCEDURES	29	Financial Advisor	47
Property Tax Code and County Wide Appraisal District	29	Underwriting	47
Ad Valorem Taxation.....	29	Forward Looking Statements.....	48
Taxable Property, Exemptions and Agricultural Exclusions	29	Information from External Sources	48
Levy and Collection of Taxes	32	Authorization of the Official Statement	48
Public Hearing and Rollback Tax Rate.....	32		
The District's Rights in the Event of Tax Delinquencies.....	33		
APPENDIX A – SELECTED FINANCIAL INFORMATION OF THE DISTRICT	A-1		
APPENDIX B – GENERAL INFORMATION REGARDING THE DISTRICT AND ITS ECONOMY	B-1		
APPENDIX C – AUDITED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS	C-1		
APPENDIX D – FORM OF BOND COUNSEL'S OPINION	D-1		

The cover page hereof, the appendices hereto, and any addenda, supplement or amendment hereto are part of this Official Statement.

OFFICIAL STATEMENT SUMMARY INFORMATION

The following information is qualified in its entirety by more detailed information and financial statements appearing elsewhere in this Official Statement:

THE DISTRICT	The Snook Independent School District (the "District") is located in Burleson County, Texas. The District is located 17 miles southwest of Bryan, Texas, on FM 60. The District was created under State statute and is governed by a seven-member Board of Trustees (the "Board"). Policy-making and supervisory functions are the responsibility of, and are vested in, the Board. The Board delegates administrative responsibilities to the Superintendent of Schools who is the chief administrative officer of the District. Support services are supplied by consultants and advisors.
THE BONDS	<p>The Bonds mature on February 15 in each of the years 2019 through 2028, inclusive, and in the years 2030, 2032, 2034, 2036, 2038, 2040, 2043, and 2048.</p> <p>Interest on the Bonds shall accrue from the initial date of delivery (identified below) and is payable semiannually on February 15 and August 15, commencing February 15, 2019, until stated maturity or prior redemption.</p>
DATED DATE	September 1, 2018.
REDEMPTION	The Bonds maturing on and after February 15, 2028, are subject to redemption prior to maturity at the option of the District, in whole or in part, in principal amounts of \$5,000 or any integral multiple thereof, on February 15, 2027, or any date thereafter, at a redemption price equal to the principal amount thereof plus accrued interest to the date of fixed for redemption. (See "THE BONDS – Optional Redemption Provisions of the Bonds"). The Term Bonds (as defined herein) are additionally subject to mandatory sinking fund redemption as described herein (See "THE BONDS – Mandatory Sinking Fund Redemption").
SECURITY FOR THE BONDS ..	The Bonds constitute direct obligations of the District payable from a continuing, direct annual ad valorem tax levied, without legal limitation as to rate or amount, against all taxable property located within the District.
TAX MATTERS	In the opinion of Orrick, Herrington & Sutcliffe LLP, Bond Counsel, based upon an analysis of existing laws, regulations, rulings and court decisions, and assuming, among other matters, the accuracy of certain representations and compliance with certain covenants, interest on the Bonds is excluded from gross income for federal income tax purposes under Section 103 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986. In the further opinion of Bond Counsel, interest on the Bonds is not a specific preference item for purposes of the federal alternative minimum tax. Bond Counsel expresses no opinion regarding any other tax consequences related to the ownership or disposition of, or the amount, accrual or receipt of interest on, the Bonds. The Bonds have been designated as "qualified tax-exempt obligations" for financial institutions. See "TAX MATTERS" herein.
PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE	The District has applied for and received conditional approval from the Texas Education Agency for the payment of principal of and interest on the Bonds to be guaranteed under the Permanent School Fund Guarantee Program, which guarantee will automatically become effective when the Attorney General of Texas approves the Bonds. See "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM" herein.
PAYING AGENT/REGISTRAR ..	The initial Paying Agent/Registrar is UMB Bank, N.A., Austin, Texas.
MUNICIPAL BOND RATING	The Bonds have been rated Aaa by Moody's Investor Services ("Moody's") by virtue of the guarantee of the Permanent School Fund of the State of Texas. The Bonds are rates A2 by Moody's without regard to credit enhancement. See "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM" and "OTHER PERTINENT INFORMATION – Municipal Bond Rating" herein.
FUTURE BOND ISSUES	The District does not anticipate the issuance of additional ad valorem tax-supported debt in the calendar year 2018.
PAYMENT RECORD	The District has never defaulted on the payment of its bonded indebtedness.
DELIVERY	When issued, anticipated to occur on or about September 11, 2018 (the "Delivery Date").
LEGALITY	The Bonds are subject to the approval of legality by the Attorney General of the State of Texas and the approval of certain legal matters by Orrick, Herrington & Sutcliffe LLP, Austin, Texas, Bond Counsel (see "APPENDIX D – FORM OF BOND COUNSEL'S OPINION" herein).

OFFICIAL STATEMENT

relating to

\$7,350,000

**SNOOK INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
(A political subdivision of the State of Texas located in Burleson County, Texas)
UNLIMITED TAX SCHOOL BUILDING BONDS, SERIES 2018**

INTRODUCTION

This Official Statement of Snook Independent School District (the "District") is provided to furnish certain information in connection with the sale of the District's \$7,350,000 Unlimited Tax School Building Bonds, Series 2018 (the "Bonds").

This Official Statement, which includes the cover page and the appendices hereto, provides certain information about the District and its finances. All descriptions of documents contained herein are only summaries and are qualified in their entirety by reference to each such document. Copies of such documents may be obtained upon request from the District and, during the offering period, from the District's Financial Advisor, Live Oak Public Finance, LLC, 915 W. Annie Street, Austin, Texas 78704, by electronic mail or upon payment of reasonable copying, mailing, and handling charges.

This Official Statement speaks only as to its date, and the information contained herein is subject to change. A copy of the Official Statement pertaining to the Bonds will be filed by the Underwriter with the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board through its Electronic Municipal Markets Access ("EMMA") system. See "CONTINUING DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION" herein for a description of the District's undertaking to provide certain information on a continuing basis. Capitalized terms used, but not defined herein, shall have the meanings ascribed thereto in the Order (defined below).

PLAN OF FINANCING

Purpose

The Bonds are being issued (a) for the purposes of constructing, acquiring, renovating, and equipping school buildings and (ii) to pay for professional services associated with the costs of issuance of the Bonds.

Sources and Uses of Funds

The proceeds from the sale of the Bonds will be applied approximately as follows:

<u>Sources of Funds:</u>	
Par Amount of Bonds	\$7,350,000.00
Reoffering Premium	<u>\$335,529.80</u>
TOTAL SOURCES	<u>\$7,685,529.80</u>
 <u>Uses of Funds:</u>	
Deposit to Construction Fund	\$7,500,000.00
Underwriter's Discount	\$50,574.50
Costs of Issuance	<u>\$134,955.30</u>
TOTAL USES	<u>\$7,685,529.80</u>

THE BONDS

General Description

The Bonds will be dated September 1, 2018 (the "Dated Date") and will accrue interest from the initial date of delivery (the "Delivery Date"), and such interest shall be payable on February 15 and August 15 in each year, commencing February 15, 2019, until stated maturity or prior redemption. The Bonds will mature on the dates and in the principal amounts and will bear interest at the rates set forth on page -ii- of this Official Statement.

Interest on the Bonds is payable to the registered owners appearing on the bond registration books kept by the Paying Agent/Registrar relating to the Bonds (the "Bond Register") on the Record Date (identified below) and such interest shall be paid by the Paying Agent/Registrar (a) by check sent by United States mail, first class, postage prepaid, to the address of the registered owner recorded in the Bond Register or (b) by such other method, acceptable to the Paying Agent/Registrar, requested by, and at the risk and expense of, the registered owner. The principal of the Bonds is payable at stated maturity or prior redemption upon their presentation and surrender to the Paying Agent/Registrar. The Bonds will be issued only in fully registered form in any integral multiple of \$5,000 principal for any one maturity.

Initially the Bonds will be registered and delivered only to Cede & Co., the nominee of The Depository Trust Company ("DTC") pursuant to the Book-Entry-Only System described herein. **No physical delivery of the Bonds will be made to the owners thereof.** Notwithstanding the foregoing, as long as the Bonds are held in the Book-Entry-Only System, principal of, premium, if any, and interest on the Bonds will be payable by the Paying Agent/Registrar to Cede & Co., which will make distribution of the amounts so paid to the participating members of DTC for subsequent payment to the Beneficial Owners (defined herein) of the Bonds. See "BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM" herein.

Authority for Issuance

The Bonds are being issued pursuant to the Constitution and general laws of the State of Texas (the "State"), particularly Sections 45.001 and 45.003(b)(1), Texas Education Code, as amended, an election held in the District on May 5, 2018 (the "Election"), and an order authorizing the issuance of the Bonds (the "Order") adopted by the Board of Trustees (the "Board") of the District on August 15, 2018.

Security for Payment

The Bonds constitute direct obligations of the District payable from a continuing, direct annual ad valorem tax levied, without legal limitation as to rate or amount, against all taxable property located within the District. The District has applied for and received conditional approval from the Texas Education Agency (defined herein) for the payment of principal of and interest on the Bonds to be guaranteed under the Permanent School Fund Guarantee Program (defined herein) which guarantee will automatically become effective when the Attorney General of Texas approves the Bonds. See "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM" herein.

Permanent School Fund Guarantee

The District has applied for received conditional approval from the Texas Education Agency for the payment of principal of and interest on the Bonds to be guaranteed under the Permanent School Fund Guarantee Program which guarantee will automatically become effective when the Attorney General of Texas approves the Bonds. See "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM" herein.

Optional Redemption Provisions of the Bonds

The Bonds maturing on and after February 15, 2028, are subject to redemption prior to maturity at the option of the District, in whole or in part, in principal amounts of \$5,000 or any integral multiple thereof, on February 15, 2027, or any date thereafter, at the par value thereof plus accrued interest to the date of redemption. If less than all of such Bonds are to be redeemed, the District may select the maturities of Bonds to be redeemed. If less than all such Bonds of any maturity are to be redeemed, the Paying Agent/Registrar (or DTC while the Bonds are in Book-Entry-Only form) shall determine by lot the Bonds, or portions thereof, within such maturity to be redeemed. If a Bond (or any portion of the principal sum thereof) shall have been called for redemption and notice of such redemption shall have been given, such Bond (or the principal amount thereof to be redeemed) shall become due and payable on such redemption date and

interest thereon shall cease to accrue from and after the redemption date, provided funds for the payment of the redemption price and accrued interest thereon are held by the Paying Agent/Registrar on the redemption date.

Mandatory Sinking Fund Redemption

The Bonds maturing on February 15 in the years 2030, 2032, 2034, 2036, 2038, 2040, 2043, and 2048 (the "Term Bonds") are subject to mandatory sinking fund redemption and shall be redeemed by the District prior to their scheduled maturities on February 15 in the years and in the amounts set forth below at a redemption price equal to the principal amount redeemed plus accrued interest to the mandatory redemption date (the "Mandatory Redemption Dates"):

Term Bonds Stated to Mature on February 15, 2030

<u>Redemption Date</u>	<u>Principal Amount</u>
February 15, 2029	\$195,000
February 15, 2030	205,000*

Term Bonds Stated to Mature on February 15, 2032

<u>Redemption Date</u>	<u>Principal Amount</u>
February 15, 2031	\$210,000
February 15, 2032	220,000*

Term Bonds Stated to Mature on February 15, 2034

<u>Redemption Date</u>	<u>Principal Amount</u>
February 15, 2033	\$230,000
February 15, 2034	240,000*

Term Bonds Stated to Mature on February 15, 2036

<u>Redemption Date</u>	<u>Principal Amount</u>
February 15, 2035	\$250,000
February 15, 2036	255,000*

Term Bonds Stated to Mature on February 15, 2038

<u>Redemption Date</u>	<u>Principal Amount</u>
February 15, 2037	\$270,000
February 15, 2038	280,000*

Term Bonds Stated to Mature on February 15, 2040

<u>Redemption Date</u>	<u>Principal Amount</u>
February 15, 2039	\$290,000
February 15, 2040	300,000*

Term Bonds Stated to Mature on February 15, 2043

<u>Redemption Date</u>	<u>Principal Amount</u>
February 15, 2041	\$315,000
February 15, 2042	325,000
February 15, 2043	340,000*

**Term Bonds Stated to
Mature on February 15, 2048**

<u>Redemption Date</u>	<u>Principal Amount</u>
February 15, 2044	\$350,000
February 15, 2045	365,000
February 15, 2046	380,000
February 15, 2047	395,000
February 15, 2048	410,000*

**Payable at stated maturity*

The principal amount of Term Bonds required to be redeemed on any redemption date pursuant to operation of the mandatory sinking fund redemption provisions shall be reduced, at the option of the District, by the principal amount of any Term Bonds which, at least 45 days prior to the mandatory sinking fund redemption date (i) shall have been acquired by the District at a price not exceeding the principal amount of such Term Bonds plus accrued interest to the date of purchase thereof, and delivered to the Paying Agent/Registrar for cancellation, or (ii) shall have been redeemed pursuant to the optional redemption provisions of the Order and not previously credited to a mandatory sinking fund redemption.

Notice of Redemption

Not less than 30 days prior to a redemption date for the Bonds, the District shall cause a notice of redemption to be sent by United States mail, first class, postage prepaid, to each registered owner of a Bond to be redeemed, in whole or in part, at the address of the holder appearing on the Bond Registrar at the close of business on the business day next preceding the date of mailing such notice. ANY NOTICE OF REDEMPTION SO MAILED SHALL BE CONCLUSIVELY PRESUMED TO HAVE BEEN DULY GIVEN IRRESPECTIVE OF WHETHER ONE OR MORE BONDHOLDERS FAILED TO RECEIVE SUCH NOTICE. NOTICE HAVING BEEN SO GIVEN, THE BONDS CALLED FOR REDEMPTION SHALL BECOME DUE AND PAYABLE ON THE SPECIFIED REDEMPTION DATE, AND NOTWITHSTANDING THAT ANY BOND OR PORTION THEREOF HAS NOT BEEN SURRENDERED FOR PAYMENT, INTEREST ON SUCH BOND OR PORTION THEREOF SHALL CEASE TO ACCRUE.

The Paying Agent/Registrar and the District, so long as the Book-Entry-Only System is used for the Bonds, will send any notice of redemption, notice of proposed amendment to the Order or other notices with respect to the Bonds only to DTC. Any failure by DTC to advise any DTC participant, or of any DTC participant or indirect participant to notify the Beneficial Owner, shall not affect the validity of the redemption of the Bonds called for redemption or any other action premised on such notice or any such notice. Redemption of portions of the Bonds by the District will reduce the outstanding principal amount of such Bonds held by DTC. In such event, DTC may implement, through its Book-Entry-Only System, a redemption of such Bonds held for the account of DTC participants in accordance with its rules or other agreements with DTC participants and then DTC participants and indirect participants may implement a redemption of such Bonds from the Beneficial Owners. Any such selection of Bonds to be redeemed will not be governed by the Order and will not be conducted by the District or the Paying Agent/Registrar. Neither the District nor the Paying Agent/Registrar will have any responsibility to DTC participants, indirect participants or the persons for whom DTC participants act as nominees, with respect to the payments on the Bonds or the providing of notice to DTC participants, indirect participants, or Beneficial Owners of the selection of portions of the Bonds for redemption. See "BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM" herein.

With respect to any optional redemption of the Bonds, unless certain prerequisites to such redemption required by the Order have been met and money sufficient to pay the principal of and premium, if any, and interest on the Bonds to be redeemed will have been received by the Paying Agent/Registrar prior to the giving of such notice of redemption, such notice may state that said redemption will, at the option of the District, be conditional upon the satisfaction of such prerequisites and receipt of such money by the Paying Agent/Registrar on or prior to the date fixed for such redemption or upon any prerequisite set forth in such notice of redemption. If a conditional notice of redemption is given and such prerequisites to the redemption are not fulfilled, such notice will be of no force and effect, the District will not redeem such Bonds and the Paying Agent/Registrar will give notice in the manner in which the notice of redemption was given, to the effect that such Bonds have not been redeemed.

Defeasance

The Order provides that the District may discharge its obligations to the registered owners of any or all of the Bonds to pay principal, interest and redemption price thereon in any manner permitted by law. Under current Texas law, such

discharge may be accomplished either by (i) depositing with the Comptroller of Public Accounts of the State of Texas a sum of money equal to the principal of, premium if any, and all interest to accrue on the Bonds to maturity or prior redemption; or (ii) by depositing with a paying agent, or other authorized escrow agent, amounts sufficient to provide for the payment and/or redemption of the Bonds; provided that such deposits may be invested and reinvested only in (a) direct, noncallable obligations of the United States of America, including obligations that are unconditionally guaranteed by the United States of America, (b) noncallable obligations of an agency or instrumentality of the United States of America, including obligations that are unconditionally guaranteed or insured by the agency or instrumentality and that are rated as to investment quality by a nationally recognized investment rating firm not less than AAA or its equivalent, and (c) noncallable obligations of a state or an agency or a county, municipality or other political subdivision of a state that have been refunded and that are rated as to investment quality by a nationally recognized investment rating firm not less than AAA or its equivalent; or (iii) any combination of (i) and (ii) above. The foregoing obligations may be in book-entry form, and shall mature and/or bear interest payable at such times and in such amounts as will be sufficient to provide for the scheduled payment and/or redemption of the Bonds, as the case may be. If any of the Bonds are to be redeemed prior to their respective dates of maturity, provision must have been made for the payment to the registered owners of such Bonds at the date of maturity or prior redemption of the full amount to which such owner would be entitled and for giving notice of redemption as provided in the Order.

Upon such deposit as described above, such Bonds shall no longer be regarded to be outstanding or unpaid and will cease to be outstanding obligations secured by the Order or treated as debt of the District for purposes of taxation or applying any limitation on the District's ability to issue debt or for any other purpose. After firm banking and financial arrangements for the discharge and final payment or redemption of the Bonds have been made as described above, all rights of the District to initiate proceedings to call the Bonds for redemption or take any other action amending the terms of the Bonds are extinguished; provided, however, that the right to call the Bonds for redemption is not extinguished if the District: (i) in the proceedings providing for the firm banking and financial arrangements, expressly reserves the right to call the Bonds for redemption; (ii) gives notice of the reservation of that right to the owners of the Bonds immediately following the making of the firm banking and financial arrangements; and (iii) directs that notice of the reservation be included in any redemption notices that it authorizes.

There is no assurance that the current law will not be changed in a manner which would permit investments other than those described above to be made with amounts deposited to defease the Bonds. Because the Order does not contractually limit such investments, registered owners may be deemed to have consented to defeasance with such other investments, notwithstanding the fact that such investments may not be of the same investment quality as those currently permitted under State law. There is no assurance that the ratings for U.S. Treasury securities used as Government Securities or that for any other Government Security will be maintained at any particular rating category.

Upon defeasance, such defeased Bonds shall no longer be regarded to be outstanding or unpaid and such Bonds will no longer be guaranteed by the Texas Permanent School Fund.

Amendments

The District may amend the Order without the consent of or notice to any registered owners in any manner not detrimental to the interests of the registered owners, including the curing of any ambiguity, inconsistency, or formal defect or omission therein. In addition, the District may, with the written consent of the holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Bonds then outstanding, amend, add to, or rescind any of the provisions of the Order; except that, without the consent of all of the registered owners of the Bonds then outstanding, no such amendment, addition, or rescission may (1) change the date specified as the date on which the principal of or any installment of interest on any Bond is due and payable, reduce the principal amount, the redemption price therefor, or the rate of interest thereon, or in any other way modify the terms of payment of the principal of or interest on the Bonds, (2) give any preference to any Bond over any other Bond, or (3) reduce the percentage of the aggregate principal amount of Bonds required to be held for consent to any amendment, addition, or waiver, or rescission.

Default and Remedies

The Order does not establish specific events of default with respect to the Bonds or provide for the appointment of a trustee to represent the interests of the bondholders upon any failure of the District to perform in accordance with the terms of the Order, or upon any other condition. Under Texas law, there is no right to the acceleration of maturity of the Bonds upon the failure of the District to observe any covenant under the Order. Such registered owner's only practical remedy, if a default occurs, is a mandamus or mandatory injunction proceeding to compel the District to levy, assess and collect an annual ad valorem tax sufficient to pay principal of and interest on the Bonds as it becomes due. The

enforcement of any such remedy may be difficult and time consuming and a registered owner could be required to enforce such remedy on a periodic basis.

On June 30, 2006, the Texas Supreme Court ruled in *Tooke v. City of Mexia*, 197 S.W.3rd 325 (Tex. 2006) (“Tooke”) that a waiver of sovereign immunity must be provided for by statute in “clear and unambiguous” language. In so ruling, the Court declared that statutory language such as “sue and be sued”, in and of itself, did not constitute a clear and unambiguous waiver of sovereign immunity. In *Tooke*, the Court noted the enactment in 2005 of sections 271.151-.160, Texas Local Government Code (the “Local Government Immunity Waiver Act”), which, according to the Court, waives “immunity from suit for contract claims against most local governmental entities in certain circumstances.” The Local Government Immunity Waiver Act covers school districts and relates to contracts entered into by school districts for providing goods or services to school districts.

Neither the remedy of mandamus nor any other type of injunctive relief was at issue in *Tooke*, and it is unclear whether *Tooke* will be construed to have any effect with respect to the exercise of mandamus, as such remedy has been interpreted by Texas courts. In general, Texas courts have held that a writ of mandamus may be issued to require public officials to perform ministerial acts that clearly pertain to their duties. Texas courts have held that a ministerial act is defined as a legal duty that is prescribed and defined with a precision and certainty that leaves nothing to the exercise of discretion or judgment, though mandamus is not available to enforce purely contractual duties. However, mandamus may be used to require a public officer to perform legally-imposed ministerial duties necessary for the performance of a valid contract to which the State or a political subdivision of the State is a party (including the payment of monies due under a contract).

The District is also eligible to seek relief from its creditors under Chapter 9 of the U.S. Bankruptcy Code (“Chapter 9”). Although Chapter 9 provides for the recognition of a security interest represented by a specifically pledged source of revenues, the pledge of taxes in support of a general obligation of a bankrupt entity is not specifically recognized as a security interest under Chapter 9. Chapter 9 also includes an automatic stay provision that would prohibit, without Bankruptcy Court approval, the prosecution of any other legal action by creditors or bondholders of an entity, which has sought protection under Chapter 9. Therefore, should the District avail itself of Chapter 9 protection from creditors, the ability to enforce would be subject to the approval of the Bankruptcy Court (which could require that the action be heard in Bankruptcy Court instead of another federal or state court); and, the Bankruptcy Code provides for broad discretionary powers of a Bankruptcy Court in administering any proceeding brought before it. The opinion of Bond Counsel will note that all opinions relative to the enforceability of the Order and the Bonds are qualified with respect to the customary rights of debtors of political subdivisions of the State relative to their creditors and may be limited by general principles of equity which permit the exercise of judicial discretion.

See “THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM” herein for a description of the procedures to be followed for payment of the Bonds by the Permanent School Fund in the event the District fails to make a payment on the Bonds when due.

Payment Record

The District has never defaulted on the payment of its bonded indebtedness.

Legality

The Bonds are offered when, as, and if issued, and subject to the approval of legality by the Attorney General of the State of Texas and the opinion of the District’s Bond Counsel, Orrick, Herrington & Sutcliffe LLP, Austin, Texas (“Bond Counsel”).

Delivery

When issued; anticipated to occur on or about September 11, 2018.

Future Issues

The District does not anticipate the issuance of additional ad valorem tax-supported debt in calendar year 2018.

REGISTRATION, TRANSFER AND EXCHANGE

Paying Agent/Registrar

The initial Paying Agent/Registrar is UMB Bank, N.A., Austin, Texas. The Bonds will be issued in fully registered form in multiples of \$5,000 or integral multiple thereof for any one stated maturity, and principal and interest will be paid by the Paying Agent/Registrar. If the date for the payment of the principal or interest on, or redemption price of, the Bonds shall be a Saturday, Sunday, a legal holiday or a day when banking institutions in the city where the Paying Agent/ Registrar is located are authorized to close, then the date for such payment shall be the next succeeding day which is not such a day, and payment on such date shall have the same force and effect as if made on the date payment was due.

Successor Paying Agent/Registrar

The District covenants that until the Bonds are paid it will at all times maintain and provide a paying agent/registrar. In the Order, the District retains the right to replace the Paying Agent/Registrar. If the Paying Agent/Registrar is replaced by the District, the new Paying Agent/Registrar must accept the previous Paying Agent/Registrar's records and act in the same capacity as the previous Paying Agent/Registrar. Any successor Paying Agent/Registrar selected by the District must be a bank, trust company, financial institution or other entity duly qualified and legally authorized to serve and perform the duties of Paying Agent/Registrar for the Bonds. Upon any change in the Paying Agent/Registrar for the Bonds, the District will promptly cause a notice thereof to be sent to each registered owner of the Bonds by United States mail, first class, postage prepaid, which notice shall give the address of the new Paying Agent/Registrar.

Record Date

The record date ("Record Date") for determining the registered owner entitled to receive a payment of interest on a Bond is the last day of the month next preceding each interest payment date.

In the event of a non-payment of interest on a scheduled payment date, and for 30 days thereafter, a new record date for such interest payment (a "Special Record Date") will be established by the Paying Agent/Registrar, if and when funds for the payment of such interest have been received. Notice of the Special Record Date and of the scheduled payment date of the past due interest (which shall be 15 days after the Special Record Date) shall be sent at least five (5) business days prior to the Special Record Date by United States mail, first class, postage prepaid, to the address of each registered owner of a Bond appearing on the Bond Register at the close of business on the last business day next preceding the date of mailing of such notice.

Registration, Transferability and Exchange

In the event the Book-Entry-Only System shall be discontinued, printed certificates will be issued to the registered owners of the Bonds and thereafter the Bonds may be transferred, registered, and assigned on the Bond Register only upon presentation and surrender of such printed certificates to the Paying Agent/Registrar, and such registration and transfer shall be without expense or service charge to the registered owner, except for any tax or other governmental charges required to be paid with respect to such registration and transfer. A Bond may be assigned by the execution of an assignment form on the Bond or by other instrument of transfer and assignment acceptable to the Paying Agent/Registrar. A new Bond or Bonds will be delivered by the Paying Agent/Registrar in lieu of the Bonds being transferred or exchanged at the designated office of the Paying Agent/Registrar, or sent by United States registered mail to the new registered owner at the registered owner's request, risk and expense. New Bonds issued in an exchange or transfer of Bonds will be delivered to the registered owner or assignee of the registered owner in not more than three (3) business days after the receipt of the Bonds to be canceled in the exchange or transfer and the written instrument of transfer or request for exchange duly executed by the registered owner or his duly authorized agent, in form satisfactory to the Paying Agent/Registrar. New Bonds registered and delivered in an exchange or transfer shall be in authorized denominations and for a like kind and aggregate principal amount and having the same maturity or maturities as the Bond or Bonds surrendered for exchange or transfer. See "BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM" herein for a description of the system to be utilized initially in regard to ownership and transferability of the Bonds.

Limitation on Transfer of Bonds

Neither the District nor the Paying Agent/Registrar are required (1) to make any transfer or exchange during a period beginning at the opening of business 45 days before the day of the first mailing of a notice of redemption of Bonds and

ending at the close of business on the day of such mailing, or (2) to transfer or exchange any Bonds so selected for redemption when such redemption is scheduled to occur within 45 calendar days; provided however, that such limitation of transfer is not applicable to an exchange by the registered owner of the uncalled balance of a Bond.

Replacement Bonds

In the event the Book-Entry-Only System has been discontinued, and any Bond is mutilated, destroyed, stolen or lost, a new Bond of like kind and in the same maturity and amount as the Bond so mutilated, destroyed, stolen or lost will be issued. In the case of a mutilated Bond, such new Bond will be delivered only upon surrender and cancellation of such mutilated Bond. In the case of any Bond issued in lieu of and in substitution for a Bond which has been destroyed, stolen, or lost, such new Bond will be delivered only (i) upon filing with the District and the Paying Agent/Registrar evidence satisfactory to establish to the District and the Paying Agent/Registrar that such Bond has been destroyed, stolen or lost and proof of the ownership thereof, and (ii) upon furnishing the District and the Paying Agent/Registrar with bond or indemnity satisfactory to them. The person requesting the authentication and delivery of a new Bond must comply with such other reasonable regulations as the Paying Agent/Registrar may prescribe and pay such expenses as the Paying Agent/Registrar may incur in connection therewith.

BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM

The following describes how ownership of the Bonds is to be transferred and how the principal of, premium, if any, and interest on the Bonds are to be paid to and credited by DTC (defined below) while the Bonds are registered in its nominee name. The information in this section concerning DTC and the Book-Entry-Only System has been provided by DTC for use in disclosure documents such as this Official Statement. The District, the Financial Advisor, and the Underwriter believe the source of such information to be reliable, but take no responsibility for the accuracy or completeness thereof.

The District cannot and does not give any assurance that (1) DTC will distribute payments of debt service on the Bonds, or redemption or other notices, to DTC Participants, (2) DTC Participants or others will distribute debt service payments paid to DTC or its nominee (as the registered owner of the Bonds), or redemption or other notices, to the Beneficial Owners, or that they will do so on a timely basis, or (3) DTC will serve and act in the manner described in this Official Statement. The current rules applicable to DTC are on file with the United States Securities and Exchange Commission, and the current procedures of DTC to be followed in dealing with DTC Participants are on file with DTC.

The Depository Trust Company ("DTC"), New York, New York, will act as securities depository for the Bonds. The Bonds will be issued as fully registered securities registered in the name of Cede & Co. (DTC's partnership nominee) or such other name as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC. One fully-registered security certificate will be issued for each maturity of the Bonds, each in the aggregate principal amount of such maturity, and will be deposited with DTC.

DTC, the world's largest depository, is a limited-purpose trust company organized under the New York Banking Law, a "banking organization" within the meaning of the New York Banking Law, a member of the Federal Reserve System, a "clearing corporation" within the meaning of the New York Uniform Commercial Code, and a "clearing agency" registered pursuant to the provisions of Section 17A of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934. DTC holds and provides asset servicing for over 3.5 million issues of U.S. and non-U.S. equity issues, corporate and municipal debt issues, and money market instruments from over 100 countries that DTC's participants ("Direct Participants") deposit with DTC. DTC also facilitates the post-trade settlement among Direct Participants of sales and other securities transactions in deposited securities, through electronic computerized book-entry transfers and pledges between Direct Participants' accounts. This eliminates the need for physical movement of securities certificates. Direct Participants include both U.S. and non-U.S. securities brokers and dealers, banks, trust companies, clearing corporations, and certain other organizations. DTC is a wholly-owned subsidiary of The Depository Trust & Clearing Corporation ("DTCC"). DTCC is the holding company for DTC, National Securities Clearing Corporation, and Fixed Income Clearing Corporation, all of which are registered clearing agencies. DTCC is owned by the users of its regulated subsidiaries. Access to the DTC system is also available to others such as both U.S. and non-U.S. securities brokers and dealers, banks, trust companies, and clearing corporations that clear through or maintain a custodial relationship with a Direct Participant, either directly or indirectly ("Indirect Participants"). DTC has a S&P Global Ratings' rating of AA+. The DTC Rules applicable to its Participants are on file with the United States Securities and Exchange Commission. More information about DTC can be found at www.dtcc.com.

Purchases of Bonds under the DTC system must be made by or through Direct Participants, which will receive a credit for the Bonds on DTC's records. The ownership interest of each actual purchaser of each Bond ("Beneficial Owner") is in turn to be recorded on the Direct and Indirect Participants' records. Beneficial Owners will not receive written confirmation from DTC of their purchase. Beneficial Owners are, however, expected to receive written confirmations providing details of the transaction, as well as periodic statements of their holdings, from the Direct or Indirect Participant through which the Beneficial Owner entered into the transaction. Transfers of ownership interests in the Bonds are to be accomplished by entries made on the books of Direct and Indirect Participants acting on behalf of Beneficial Owners. Beneficial Owners will not receive certificates representing their ownership interests in Bonds, except in the event that use of the book-entry-only system for the Bonds is discontinued.

To facilitate subsequent transfers, all Bonds deposited by Direct Participants with DTC are registered in the name of DTC's partnership nominee, Cede & Co., or such other name as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC. The deposit of Bonds with DTC and their registration in the name of Cede & Co. or such other DTC nominee do not effect any change in beneficial ownership. DTC has no knowledge of the actual Beneficial Owners of the Bonds. DTC's records reflect only the identity of the Direct Participants to whose accounts such Bonds are credited, which may or may not be the Beneficial Owners. The Direct and Indirect Participants will remain responsible for keeping account of their holdings on behalf of their customers.

Conveyance of notices and other communications by DTC to Direct Participants, by Direct Participants to Indirect Participants, and by Direct Participants and Indirect Participants to Beneficial Owners will be governed by arrangements among them, subject to any statutory or regulatory requirements as may be in effect from time to time. Beneficial Owners of Bonds may wish to take certain steps to augment the transmission to them of notices of significant events with respect to the Bonds, such as redemptions, tenders, defaults, and proposed amendments to the Bond documents. For example, Beneficial Owners of Bonds may wish to ascertain that the nominee holding the Bonds for their benefit has agreed to obtain and transmit notices to Beneficial Owners. In the alternative, Beneficial Owners may wish to provide their names and addresses to the registrar and request that copies of notices be provided directly to them.

Redemption notices shall be sent to DTC. If less than all of the Bonds within a maturity are being redeemed, DTC's practice is to determine by lot the amount of the interest of each Direct Participant in such maturity to be redeemed.

Neither DTC nor Cede & Co. (nor any other DTC nominee) will consent or vote with respect to Bonds unless authorized by a Direct Participant in accordance with DTC's Procedures. Under its usual procedures, DTC mails an Omnibus Proxy to the District as soon as possible after the record date. The Omnibus Proxy assigns Cede & Co.'s consenting or voting rights to those Direct Participants to whose accounts Bonds are credited on the record date (identified in a listing attached to the Omnibus Proxy).

Payments on the Bonds will be made to Cede & Co., or such other nominee as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC. DTC's practice is to credit Direct Participants' accounts upon DTC's receipt of funds and corresponding detail information from the District or the Paying Agent/Registrar, on the payment date in accordance with their respective holdings shown on DTC's records. Payments by Participants to Beneficial Owners will be governed by standing instructions and customary practices, as is the case with securities held for the accounts of customers in bearer form or registered in "street name," and will be the responsibility of such Participant and not of DTC [nor its nominee], the Paying Agent/Registrar, or the District, subject to any statutory or regulatory requirements as may be in effect from time to time. Payments to Cede & Co. (or such other nominee as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC) are the responsibility of the District or the Paying Agent/Registrar. Disbursement of such payments to Direct Participants will be the responsibility of DTC, and disbursement of such payments to the Beneficial Owners will be the responsibility of Direct and Indirect Participants.

DTC may discontinue providing its services as depository with respect to the Bonds at any time by giving reasonable notice to the District or the Paying Agent/Registrar. Under such circumstances, in the event that a successor depository is not obtained, physical bond certificates are required to be printed and delivered.

The information in this section concerning DTC and DTC's book-entry system has been obtained from sources that the District believes to be reliable, but none of the District, the Financial Advisor, or the Underwriter take any responsibility for the accuracy thereof.

Use of Certain Terms in Other Sections of This Official Statement

In reading this Official Statement it should be understood that while the Bonds are in the Book-Entry-Only System, references in other sections of this Official Statement to registered owners should be read to include the person for which the Participant acquires an interest in the Bonds, but (b) all rights of ownership must be exercised through DTC and the Book-Entry-Only System, and (c) except as described above, notices that are to be given to registered owners under the Order will be given only to DTC.

Effect of Termination of Book-Entry-Only System

In the event that the Book-Entry-Only System is discontinued by DTC or the use of the Book-Entry-Only System is discontinued by the District, printed physical Bond certificates will be issued to the respective holders and the Bonds will be subject to transfer, exchange and registration provisions as set forth in the Order and summarized under the caption "REGISTRATION, TRANSFER AND EXCHANGE" above.

THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM

This disclosure statement provides information relating to the program (the "Guarantee Program") administered by the Texas Education Agency (the "TEA") with respect to the Texas Permanent School Fund (defined below) guarantee of tax-supported bonds issued by Texas school districts and the guarantee of revenue bonds issued by or for the benefit of Texas charter districts. The Guarantee Program was authorized by an amendment to the Texas Constitution in 1983 and by Subchapter C of Chapter 45 of the Texas Education Code, as amended (the "Act"). While the Guarantee Program applies to bonds issued by or for both school districts and charter districts, as described below, the Act and the program rules for the two types of districts have some distinctions. For convenience of description and reference, those aspects of the Guarantee Program that are applicable to school district bonds and to charter district bonds are referred to herein as the "School District Bond Guarantee Program" and the "Charter District Bond Guarantee Program," respectively.

Some of the information contained in this Section may include projections or other forward-looking statements regarding future events or the future financial performance of the Texas Permanent School Fund (the "PSF" or the "Fund"). Actual results may differ materially from those contained in any such projections or forward-looking statements.

History and Purpose

The PSF was created with a \$2,000,000 appropriation by the Texas Legislature (the "Legislature") in 1854 expressly for the benefit of the public schools of Texas. The Constitution of 1876 stipulated that certain lands and all proceeds from the sale of these lands should also constitute the PSF. Additional acts later gave more public domain land and rights to the PSF. In 1953, the U.S. Congress passed the Submerged Lands Act that relinquished to coastal states all rights of the U.S. navigable waters within state boundaries. If the state, by law, had set a larger boundary prior to or at the time of admission to the Union, or if the boundary had been approved by Congress, then the larger boundary applied. After three years of litigation (1957-1960), the U. S. Supreme Court on May 31, 1960, affirmed Texas' historic three marine leagues (10.35 miles) seaward boundary. Texas proved its submerged lands property rights to three leagues into the Gulf of Mexico by citing historic laws and treaties dating back to 1836. All lands lying within that limit belong to the PSF. The proceeds from the sale and the mineral-related rental of these lands, including bonuses, delay rentals and royalty payments, become the corpus of the Fund. Prior to the approval by the voters of the State of an amendment to the constitutional provision under which the Fund is established and administered, which occurred on September 13, 2003 (the "Total Return Constitutional Amendment"), and which is further described below, the PSF had as its main sources of revenues capital gains from securities transactions and royalties from the sale of oil and natural gas. The Total Return Constitutional Amendment provides that interest and dividends produced by Fund investments will be additional revenue to the PSF. The State School Land Board ("SLB") maintains the land endowment of the Fund on behalf of the Fund and is authorized to manage the investments of the capital gains, royalties and other investment income relating to the land endowment. The SLB is a three-member board, the membership of which consists of the Commissioner of the Texas General Land Office (the "Land Commissioner") and two citizen members, one appointed by the Governor and one by the Texas Attorney General (the "Attorney General"). As of August 31, 2017, the General Land Office (the "GLO") managed approximately 21% of the PSF, as reflected in the fund balance of the PSF at that date.

The Texas Constitution describes the PSF as "permanent." Prior to the approval by Total Return Constitutional Amendment, only the income produced by the PSF was to be used to complement taxes in financing public education.

On November 8, 1983, the voters of the State approved a constitutional amendment that provides for the guarantee by the PSF of bonds issued by school districts. On approval by the State Commissioner of Education (the "Commissioner"), bonds properly issued by a school district are fully guaranteed by the corpus of the PSF. See "The School District Bond Guarantee Program."

In 2011, legislation was enacted that established the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program as a new component of the Guarantee Program. That legislation authorized the use of the PSF to guarantee revenue bonds issued by or for the benefit of certain open-enrollment charter schools that are designated as "charter districts" by the Commissioner. On approval by the Commissioner, bonds properly issued by a charter district participating in the Program are fully guaranteed by the corpus of the PSF. As described below, the implementation of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program was deferred pending receipt of guidance from the Internal Revenue Service (the "IRS") which was received in September 2013, and the establishment of regulations to govern the program, which regulations became effective on March 3, 2014. See "The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program."

State law also permits charter schools to be chartered and operated by school districts and other political subdivisions, but bond financing of facilities for school district-operated charter schools is subject to the School District Bond Guarantee Program, not the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program.

While the School District Bond Guarantee Program and the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program relate to different types of bonds issued for different types of Texas public schools, and have different program regulations and requirements, a bond guaranteed under either part of the Guarantee Program has the same effect with respect to the guarantee obligation of the Fund thereto, and all guaranteed bonds are aggregated for purposes of determining the capacity of the Guarantee Program (see "Capacity Limits for the Guarantee Program"). The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program as enacted by State law has not been reviewed by any court, nor has the Texas Attorney General been requested to issue an opinion, with respect to its constitutional validity.

The sole purpose of the PSF is to assist in the funding of public education for present and future generations. Prior to the adoption of the Total Return Constitutional Amendment, all interest and dividends produced by Fund investments flowed into the Available School Fund (the "ASF"), where they are distributed to local school districts and open-enrollment charter schools based on average daily attendance. Any net gains from investments of the Fund accrue to the corpus of the PSF. Prior to the approval by the voters of the State of the Total Return Constitutional Amendment, costs of administering the PSF were allocated to the ASF. With the approval of the Total Return Constitutional Amendment, the administrative costs of the Fund have shifted from the ASF to the PSF. In fiscal year 2017 distributions to the ASF amounted to an estimated \$212.49 per student and the total amount distributed to the ASF was \$1,056.4 million.

Audited financial information for the PSF is provided annually through the PSF Comprehensive Annual Financial Report (the "Annual Report"), which is filed with the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board ("MSRB"). The Annual Report includes the Message of the Executive Administrator of the Fund (the "Message") and the Management's Discussion and Analysis ("MD&A"). The Annual Report for the year ended August 31, 2017, when filed with the MSRB in accordance with the PSF undertaking and agreement made in accordance with Rule 15c2-12 ("Rule 15c2-12") of the federal Securities and Exchange Commission (the "SEC"), as described below, is hereby incorporated by reference into this disclosure. Information included herein for the year ended August 31, 2017 is derived from the audited financial statements of the PSF, which are included in the Annual Report when it is filed and posted. Reference is made to the Annual Report for the complete Message and MD&A for the year ended August 31, 2017 and for a description of the financial results of the PSF for the year ended August 31, 2017, the most recent year for which audited financial information regarding the Fund is available. The 2017 Annual Report speaks only as of its date and the TEA has not obligated itself to update the 2017 Annual Report or any other Annual Report. The TEA posts each Annual Report, which includes statistical data regarding the Fund as of the close of each fiscal year, the most recent disclosure for the Guarantee Program, the Statement of Investment Objectives, Policies and Guidelines of the Texas Permanent School Fund, which is codified at 19 Texas Administrative Code, Chapter 33 (the "Investment Policy"), monthly updates with respect to the capacity of the Guarantee Program (collectively, the "Web Site Materials") on the TEA web site at http://tea.texas.gov/Finance_and_Grants/Permanent_School_Fund/ and with the MSRB at www.emma.msrb.org. Such monthly updates regarding the Guarantee Program are also incorporated herein and made a part hereof for all purposes. In addition to the Web Site Materials, the Fund is required to make quarterly filings with the SEC under Section 13(f) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934. Such filings, which consist of a list of the Fund's holdings of securities specified in Section 13(f), including exchange-traded (e.g., NYSE) or NASDAQ-quoted stocks, equity options and warrants, shares of closed-end investment companies and certain convertible debt securities, is available from the SEC at www.sec.gov/edgar.shtml. A list of the Fund's equity and fixed income holdings as of August 31 of each year

is posted to the TEA web site and filed with the MSRB. Such list excludes holdings in the Fund's securities lending program. Such list, as filed, is incorporated herein and made a part hereof for all purposes.

The Total Return Constitutional Amendment

The Total Return Constitutional Amendment approved a fundamental change in the way that distributions are made to the ASF from the PSF. The Total Return Constitutional Amendment requires that PSF distributions to the ASF be determined using a total-return-based formula instead of the current-income-based formula, which was used from 1964 to the end of the 2003 fiscal year. The Total Return Constitutional Amendment provides that the total amount distributed from the Fund to the ASF: (1) in each year of a State fiscal biennium must be an amount that is not more than 6% of the average of the market value of the Fund, excluding real property (the "Distribution Rate"), on the last day of each of the sixteen State fiscal quarters preceding the Regular Session of the Legislature that begins before that State fiscal biennium (the "Distribution Measurement Period"), in accordance with the rate adopted by: (a) a vote of two-thirds of the total membership of the State Board of Education ("SBOE"), taken before the Regular Session of the Legislature convenes or (b) the Legislature by general law or appropriation, if the SBOE does not adopt a rate as provided by clause (a); and (2) over the ten-year period consisting of the current State fiscal year and the nine preceding state fiscal years may not exceed the total return on all investment assets of the Fund over the same ten-year period (the "Ten Year Total Return"). In April 2009, the Attorney General issued a legal opinion, Op. Tex. Att'y Gen. No. GA-0707 (2009) ("GA-0707"), at the request of the Chairman of the SBOE with regard to certain matters pertaining to the Distribution Rate and the determination of the Ten Year Total Return. In GA-0707 the Attorney General opined, among other advice, that (i) the Ten Year Total Return should be calculated on an annual basis, (ii) a contingency plan adopted by the SBOE, to permit monthly transfers equal in aggregate to the annual Distribution Rate to be halted and subsequently made up if such transfers temporarily exceed the Ten Year Total Return, is not prohibited by State law, provided that such contingency plan applies only within a fiscal year time basis, not on a biennium basis, and (iii) that the amount distributed from the Fund in a fiscal year may not exceed 6% of the average of the market value of the Fund or the Ten Year Total Return. In accordance with GA-0707, in the event that the Ten Year Total Return is exceeded during a fiscal year, transfers to the ASF will be halted. However, if the Ten Year Total Return subsequently increases during that biennium, transfers may be resumed, if the SBOE has provided for that contingency, and made in full during the remaining period of the biennium, subject to the limit of 6% in any one fiscal year. Any shortfall in the transfer that results from such events from one biennium may not be paid over to the ASF in a subsequent biennium as the SBOE would make a separate payout determination for that subsequent biennium.

In determining the Distribution Rate, the SBOE has adopted the goal of maximizing the amount distributed from the Fund in a manner designed to preserve "intergenerational equity." Intergenerational equity is the maintenance of purchasing power to ensure that endowment spending keeps pace with inflation, with the ultimate goal being to ensure that current and future generations are given equal levels of purchasing power in real terms. In making this determination, the SBOE takes into account various considerations, and relies upon its staff and external investment consultant, which undertake analysis for long-term projection periods that includes certain assumptions. Among the assumptions used in the analysis are a projected rate of growth of the average daily scholastic attendance State-wide, the projected contributions and expenses of the Fund, projected returns in the capital markets and a projected inflation rate.

See "2011 Constitutional Amendment" below for a discussion of the historic and current Distribution Rates, and a description of amendments made to the Texas Constitution on November 8, 2011 that may affect Distribution Rate decisions.

Since the enactment of a prior amendment to the Texas Constitution in 1964, the investment of the Fund has been managed with the dual objectives of producing current income for transfer to the ASF and growing the Fund for the benefit of future generations. As a result of this prior constitutional framework, prior to the adoption of the 2004 asset allocation policy the investment of the Fund historically included a significant amount of fixed income investments and dividend-yielding equity investments, to produce income for transfer to the ASF.

With respect to the management of the Fund's financial assets portfolio, the single most significant change made to date as a result of the Total Return Constitutional Amendment has been new asset allocation policies adopted from time to time by the SBOE. The SBOE generally reviews the asset allocations during its summer meeting in even numbered years. The first asset allocation policy adopted by the SBOE following the Total Return Constitutional Amendment was in February 2004, and the policy was reviewed and modified or reaffirmed in the summers of each even-numbered year, most recently in 2018. The Fund's investment policy provides for minimum and maximum ranges among the components of each of the asset classifications: equities, fixed income and alternative asset investments. The 2004 asset allocation policy decreased the fixed income target from 45% to 25% of Fund investment assets and

increased the allocation for equities from 55% to 75% of investment assets. Subsequent asset allocation policies have continued to diversify Fund assets, and have added an alternative asset allocation to the fixed income and equity allocations. The alternative asset allocation category includes real estate, real return, absolute return and private equity components. Alternative asset classes diversify the SBOE-managed assets and are not as correlated to traditional asset classes, which is intended to increase investment returns over the long run while reducing risk and return volatility of the portfolio. The most recent asset allocation, from 2016, which was reviewed and reaffirmed in June 2018, is as follows: (i) an equity allocation of 35% (consisting of U.S. large cap equities targeted at 13%, international equities at 14% and emerging international equities at 3%) and U.S. small/mid cap equities at 5%), (ii) a fixed income allocation of 19% (consisting of a 12% allocation for core bonds and a 7% allocation for emerging market debt in local currency) and (iii) an alternative asset allocation of 46% (consisting of a private equity allocation of 13%, a real estate allocation of 10%, an absolute return allocation of 10%, a risk parity allocation of 7% and a real return allocation of 6%). The 2016 asset allocation decreased U.S. large cap equities and international equities by 3% and 2%, respectively, and increased the allocations for private equity and real estate by 3% and 2%, respectively.

For a variety of reasons, each change in asset allocation for the Fund, including the 2016 modifications, have been implemented in phases, and that approach is likely to be carried forward when and if the asset allocation policy is again modified. At August 31, 2017, the Fund's financial assets portfolio was invested as follows: 43.16% in public market equity investments; 12.86% in fixed income investments; 9.99% in absolute return assets; 7.02% in private equity assets; 7.40% in real estate assets; 6.83% in risk parity assets; 5.44% in real return assets; 6.99% in emerging market debt; and 0.31% in unallocated cash.

Following on previous decisions to create strategic relationships with investment managers in certain asset classes, in September 2015 and January 2016, the SBOE approved the implementation of direct investment programs in private equity and absolute return assets, respectively, which has continued to reduce administrative costs with respect to those portfolios. The Attorney General has advised the SBOE in Op. Tex. Att'y Gen. No. GA-0998 (2013) ("GA-0998"), that the PSF is not subject to requirements of certain State competitive bidding laws with respect to the selection of investments. In GA-0998, the Attorney General also advised that the SBOE generally must use competitive bidding for the selection of investment managers and other third party providers of investment services, such as record keeping and insurance, but excluding certain professional services, such as accounting services, as State law prohibits the use of competitive bidding for specified professional services. GA-0998 provides guidance to the SBOE in connection with the direct management of alternative investments through investment vehicles to be created by the SBOE, in lieu of contracting with external managers for such services, as has been the recent practice of the PSF. The PSF staff and the Fund's investment advisor are tasked with advising the SBOE with respect to the implementation of the Fund's asset allocation policy, including the timing and manner of the selection of any external managers and other consultants.

In accordance with the Texas Constitution, the SBOE views the PSF as a perpetual institution, and the Fund is managed as an endowment fund with a long-term investment horizon. Under the total-return investment objective, the Investment Policy provides that the PSF shall be managed consistently with respect to the following: generating income for the benefit of the public free schools of Texas, the real growth of the corpus of the PSF, protecting capital, and balancing the needs of present and future generations of Texas school children. As described above, the Total Return Constitutional Amendment restricts the annual pay-out from the Fund to the total-return on all investment assets of the Fund over a rolling ten-year period. State law provides that each transfer of funds from the PSF to the ASF is made monthly, with each transfer to be in the amount of one-twelfth of the annual distribution. The heavier weighting of equity securities and alternative assets relative to fixed income investments has resulted in greater volatility of the value of the Fund. Given the greater weighting in the overall portfolio of passively managed investments, it is expected that the Fund will reflect the general performance returns of the markets in which the Fund is invested.

The asset allocation of the Fund's financial assets portfolio is subject to change by the SBOE from time to time based upon a number of factors, including recommendations to the SBOE made by internal investment staff and external consultants, changes made by the SBOE without regard to such recommendations and directives of the Legislature. Fund performance may also be affected by factors other than asset allocation, including, without limitation, the general performance of the securities markets in the United States and abroad; political and investment considerations including those relating to socially responsible investing; economic impacts relating to domestic and international climate change; development of hostilities in and among nations; cybersecurity issues that affect the securities markets, economic activity and investments, in general, application of the prudent person investment standard, which may eliminate certain investment opportunities for the Fund; management fees paid to external managers and embedded management fees for some fund investments; and limitations on the number and compensation of internal and external investment staff,

which is subject to legislative oversight. The Guarantee Program could also be impacted by changes in State or federal law or the implementation of new accounting standards.

Management and Administration of the Fund

The Texas Constitution and applicable statutes delegate to the SBOE the authority and responsibility for investment of the PSF's financial assets. In investing the Fund, the SBOE is charged with exercising the judgment and care under the circumstances then prevailing which persons of ordinary prudence, discretion and intelligence exercise in the management of their own affairs, not in regard to speculation, but in regard to the permanent disposition of their funds, considering the probable income therefrom as well as the probable safety of their capital. The SBOE has adopted a "Statement of Investment Objectives, Policies, and Guidelines of the Texas Permanent School Fund," which is codified in the Texas Administrative Code beginning at 19 TAC section 33.1.

The Total Return Constitutional Amendment provides that expenses of managing the PSF are to be paid "by appropriation" from the PSF. In January 2005, at the request of the SBOE, the Attorney General issued a legal opinion, Op. Tex. Att'y Gen. No. GA-0293 (2005), that the Total Return Constitutional Amendment requires that SBOE expenditures for managing or administering PSF investments, including payments to external investment managers, be paid from appropriations made by the Legislature, but that the Total Return Constitutional Amendment does not require the SBOE to pay from such appropriated PSF funds the indirect management costs deducted from the assets of a mutual fund or other investment company in which PSF funds have been invested.

Texas law assigns control of the Fund's land and mineral rights to the three-member SLB, which consists of the elected Commissioner of the GLO, an appointee of the Governor, and an appointee of the Attorney General. Administrative duties related to the land and mineral rights reside with the GLO, which is under the guidance of the Commissioner of the GLO. In 2007, the Legislature established the real estate special fund account of the PSF (the "Real Estate Account") consisting of proceeds and revenue from land, mineral or royalty interest, real estate investment, or other interest, including revenue received from those sources, that is set apart to the PSF under the Texas Constitution and laws, together with the mineral estate in riverbeds, channels, and the tidelands, including islands. The investment of the Real Estate Account is subject to the sole and exclusive management and control of the SLB and the Land Commissioner, who is also the head of the GLO. The 2007 legislation presented constitutional questions regarding the respective roles of the SBOE and the SLB relating to the disposition of proceeds of real estate transactions to the ASF, among other questions. Amounts in the investment portfolio of the PSF are taken into account by the SBOE for purposes of determining the Distribution Rate. An amendment to the Texas Constitution was approved by State voters on November 8, 2011, which permits the SLB to make transfers directly to the ASF, see "2011 Constitutional Amendment" below.

The SBOE contracts with its securities custodial agent to measure the performance of the total return of the Fund's financial assets. A consultant is typically retained for the purpose of providing consultation with respect to strategic asset allocation decisions and to assist the SBOE in selecting external fund management advisors. The SBOE also contracts with financial institutions for custodial and securities lending services. Like other State agencies and instrumentalities that manage large investment portfolios, the PSF has implemented an incentive compensation plan that may provide additional compensation for investment personnel, depending upon the criteria relating to the investment performance of the Fund.

As noted above, the Texas Constitution and applicable statutes make the SBOE responsible for investment of the PSF's financial assets. By law, the Commissioner is appointed by the Governor, with Senate confirmation, and assists the SBOE, but the Commissioner can neither be hired nor dismissed by the SBOE. The Executive Administrator of the Fund is also hired by and reports to the Commissioner. Moreover, although the Fund's Executive Administrator and his staff implement the decisions of and provide information to the School Finance/PSF Committee of the SBOE and the full SBOE, the SBOE can neither select nor dismiss the Executive Administrator. TEA's General Counsel provides legal advice to the Executive Administrator and to the SBOE. The SBOE has also engaged outside counsel to advise it as to its duties over the Fund, including specific actions regarding the investment of the PSF to ensure compliance with fiduciary standards, and to provide transactional advice in connection with the investment of Fund assets in non-traditional investments.

Capacity Limits for the Guarantee Program

The capacity of the Fund to guarantee bonds under the Guarantee Program is limited in two ways: by State law (the "State Capacity Limit") and by regulations and a notice issued by the IRS (the "IRS Limit"). Prior to May 20, 2003, the State Capacity Limit was equal to two times the lower of cost or fair market value of the Fund's assets, exclusive of real

estate. During the 78th Regular Session of the Legislature in 2003, legislation was enacted that increased the State Capacity Limit by 25%, to two and one half times the lower of cost or fair market value of the Fund's assets as estimated by the SBOE and certified by the State Auditor, and eliminated the real estate exclusion from the calculation. Prior to the issuance of the IRS Notice (defined below), the capacity of the program under the IRS Limit was limited to two and one-half times the lower of cost or fair market value of the Fund's assets adjusted by a factor that excluded additions to the Fund made since May 14, 1989. During the 2007 Texas Legislature, Senate Bill 389 ("SB 389") was enacted providing for additional increases in the capacity of the Guarantee Program, and specifically providing that the SBOE may by rule increase the capacity of the Guarantee Program from two and one-half times the cost value of the PSF to an amount not to exceed five times the cost value of the PSF, provided that the increased limit does not violate federal law and regulations and does not prevent bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program from receiving the highest available credit rating, as determined by the SBOE. SB 389 further provides that the SBOE shall at least annually consider whether to change the capacity of the Guarantee Program. From 2005 through 2009, the Guarantee Program twice reached capacity under the IRS Limit, and in each instance the Guarantee Program was closed to new bond guarantee applications until relief was obtained from the IRS. The most recent closure of the Guarantee Program commenced in March 2009 and the Guarantee Program reopened in February 2010 on the basis of receipt of the IRS Notice.

On December 16, 2009, the IRS published Notice 2010-5 (the "IRS Notice") stating that the IRS will issue proposed regulations amending the existing regulations to raise the IRS limit to 500% of the total cost of the assets held by the PSF as of December 16, 2009. In accordance with the IRS Notice, the amount of any new bonds to be guaranteed by the PSF, together with the then outstanding amount of bonds previously guaranteed by the PSF, must not exceed the IRS limit on the sale date of the new bonds to be guaranteed. The IRS Notice further provides that the IRS Notice may be relied upon for bonds sold on or after December 16, 2009, and before the effective date of future regulations or other public administrative guidance affecting funds like the PSF.

On September 16, 2013, the IRS published proposed regulations (the "Proposed IRS Regulations") that, among other things, would enact the IRS Notice. The preamble to the Proposed IRS Regulations provides that issuers may elect to apply the Proposed IRS Regulations, in whole or in part, to bonds sold on or after September 16, 2013, and before the date that final regulations become effective.

On July 18, 2016, the IRS issued final regulations enacting the IRS Notice (the "Final IRS Regulations"). The Final IRS Regulations are effective for bonds sold on or after October 17, 2016. The IRS Notice, the Proposed IRS Regulations and the Final IRS Regulations establish a static capacity for the Guarantee Program based upon the cost value of Fund assets on December 16, 2009 multiplied by five. On December 16, 2009, the cost value of the Guarantee Program was \$23,463,730,608 (estimated and unaudited), thereby producing an IRS Limit of approximately \$117.3 billion. The State Capacity Limit is determined on the basis of the cost value of the Fund from time to time multiplied by the capacity multiplier determined annually by the SBOE, but not to exceed a multiplier of five. The capacity of the Guarantee Program will be limited to the lower of the State Capacity Limit or the IRS Limit. On May 21, 2010, the SBOE modified the regulations that govern the School District Bond Guarantee Program (the "SDBGP Rules"), and increased the State Law Capacity to an amount equal to three times the cost value of the PSF. Such modified regulations, including the revised capacity rule, became effective on July 1, 2010. The SDBGP Rules provide that the Commissioner may reduce the multiplier to maintain the AAA credit rating of the Guarantee Program, but provide that any changes to the multiplier made by the Commissioner are to be ratified or rejected by the SBOE at the next meeting following the change. See "Valuation of the PSF and Guaranteed Bonds," below.

At its September 2015 meeting, the SBOE voted to modify the SDBGP Rules and the CDBGP Rules to increase the State Law Capacity from 3 times the cost value multiplier to 3.25 times. At that meeting, the SBOE also approved a new 5% capacity reserve for the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program. The change to the State Law Capacity became effective on February 1, 2016. At its November 2016 meeting, the SBOE again voted to increase the State Law Capacity and, in accordance with applicable requirements for the modification of SDBGP and CDBGP Rules, a second and final vote to approve the increase in the State Law Capacity occurred on February 3, 2017. As a result, the State Law Capacity increased from 3.25 times the cost value multiplier to 3.50 times effective March 1, 2017 and increased again to 3.75 times effective September 1, 2017; however, as described under "2017 Legislative Changes to the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program," the SBOE took action at its Winter 2018 meeting to roll back of a portion of the multiplier increase, which became effective in late March 2018. Based upon the cost basis of the Fund at August 31, 2017, the State Law Capacity increased from \$97,933,360,905 on August 31, 2016 to \$111,568,711,072 on August 31, 2017.

Since July 1991, when the SBOE amended the Guarantee Program Rules to broaden the range of bonds that are eligible for guarantee under the Guarantee Program to encompass most Texas school district bonds, the principal

amount of bonds guaranteed under the Guarantee Program has increased sharply. In addition, in recent years a number of factors have caused an increase in the amount of bonds issued by school districts in the State. See the table "Permanent School Fund Guaranteed Bonds" below. Effective September 1, 2009, the Act provides that the SBOE may annually establish a percentage of the cost value of the Fund to be reserved from use in guaranteeing bonds. The capacity of the Guarantee Program in excess of any reserved portion is referred to herein as the "Capacity Reserve." The SDBGP Rules provide for a minimum Capacity Reserve for the overall Guarantee Program of no less than 5%, and provide that the amount of the Capacity Reserve may be increased by a majority vote of the SBOE. The CDBGP Rules provide for an additional 5% reserve of CDBGP capacity. The Commissioner is authorized to change the Capacity Reserve, which decision must be ratified or rejected by the SBOE at its next meeting following any change made by the Commissioner. The current Capacity Reserve is noted in the monthly updates with respect to the capacity of the Guarantee Program on the TEA web site at http://tea.texas.gov/Finance_and_Grants/Permanent_School_Fund/, which are also filed with the MSRB.

Based upon historical performance of the Fund, the legal restrictions relating to the amount of bonds that may be guaranteed has generally resulted in a lower ratio of guaranteed bonds to available assets as compared to many other types of credit enhancements that may be available for Texas school district bonds and charter district bonds. However, changes in the value of the Fund due to changes in securities markets, investment objectives of the Fund, an increase in bond issues by school districts in the State or legal restrictions on the Fund, the implementation of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, or an increase in the calculation base of the Fund for purposes of making transfers to the ASF, among other factors, could adversely affect the ratio of Fund assets to guaranteed bonds and the growth of the Fund in general. It is anticipated that the issuance of the IRS Notice and the Proposed IRS Regulations will likely result in a substantial increase in the amount of bonds guaranteed under the Guarantee Program. The implementation of the Charter School Bond Guarantee Program is also expected to increase the amount of guaranteed bonds.

The Act requires that the Commissioner prepare, and the SBOE approve, an annual report on the status of the Guarantee Program (the Annual Report). The State Auditor audits the financial statements of the PSF, which are separate from other State financial statements.

The School District Bond Guarantee Program

The School District Bond Guarantee Program requires an application be made by a school district to the Commissioner for a guarantee of its bonds. If the conditions for the School District Bond Guarantee Program are satisfied, the guarantee becomes effective upon approval of the bonds by the Attorney General and remains in effect until the guaranteed bonds are paid or defeased, by a refunding or otherwise.

In the event of default, holders of guaranteed school district bonds will receive all payments due from the corpus of the PSF. Following a determination that a school district will be or is unable to pay maturing or matured principal or interest on any guaranteed bond, the Act requires the school district to notify the Commissioner not later than the fifth day before the stated maturity date of such bond or interest payment. Immediately following receipt of such notice, the Commissioner must cause to be transferred from the appropriate account in the PSF to the Paying Agent/Registrar an amount necessary to pay the maturing or matured principal and interest. Upon receipt of funds for payment of such principal or interest, the Paying Agent/Registrar must pay the amount due and forward the canceled bond or evidence of payment of the interest to the State Comptroller of Public Accounts (the "Comptroller"). The Commissioner will instruct the Comptroller to withhold the amount paid, plus interest, from the first State money payable to the school district. The amount withheld pursuant to this funding "intercept" feature will be deposited to the credit of the PSF. The Comptroller must hold such canceled bond or evidence of payment of the interest on behalf of the PSF. Following full reimbursement of such payment by the school district to the PSF with interest, the Comptroller will cancel the bond or evidence of payment of the interest and forward it to the school district. The Act permits the Commissioner to order a school district to set a tax rate sufficient to reimburse the PSF for any payments made with respect to guaranteed bonds, and also sufficient to pay future payments on guaranteed bonds, and provides certain enforcement mechanisms to the Commissioner, including the appointment of a board of managers or annexation of a defaulting school district to another school district.

If a school district fails to pay principal or interest on a bond as it is stated to mature, other amounts not due and payable are not accelerated and do not become due and payable by virtue of the district's default. The School District Bond Guarantee Program does not apply to the payment of principal and interest upon redemption of bonds, except upon mandatory sinking fund redemption, and does not apply to the obligation, if any, of a school district to pay a redemption premium on its guaranteed bonds. The guarantee applies to all matured interest on guaranteed school district bonds, whether the bonds were issued with a fixed or variable interest rate and whether the interest rate changes as a result of an interest reset provision or other bond order provision requiring an interest rate change. The guarantee does not

extend to any obligation of a school district under any agreement with a third party relating to guaranteed bonds that is defined or described in State law as a “bond enhancement agreement” or a “credit agreement,” unless the right to payment of such third party is directly as a result of such third party being a bondholder.

In the event that two or more payments are made from the PSF on behalf of a district, the Commissioner shall request the Attorney General to institute legal action to compel the district and its officers, agents and employees to comply with the duties required of them by law in respect to the payment of guaranteed bonds.

Generally, the SDBGP Rules limit guarantees to certain types of notes and bonds, including, with respect to refunding bonds issued by school districts, a requirement that the bonds produce debt service savings, and that bonds issued for capital facilities of school districts must have been voted as unlimited tax debt of the issuing district. The Guarantee Program Rules include certain accreditation criteria for districts applying for a guarantee of their bonds, and limit guarantees to districts that have less than the amount of annual debt service per average daily attendance that represents the 90th percentile of annual debt service per average daily attendance for all school districts, but such limitation will not apply to school districts that have enrollment growth of at least 25% over the previous five school years. The SDBGP Rules are codified in the Texas Administrative Code at 19 TAC section 33.65, and are available at <http://ritter.tea.state.tx.us/rules/tac/chapter033/ch033a.html#33.65>.

The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program

The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program became effective March 3, 2014. The SBOE published final regulations in the Texas Register that provide for the administration of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program (the “CDBGP Rules”). The CDBGP Rules are codified at 19 TAC section 33.67, and are available at <http://ritter.tea.state.tx.us/rules/tac/chapter033/ch033a.html#33.67>.

The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program has been authorized through the enactment of amendments to the Act, which provide that a charter holder may make application to the Commissioner for designation as a “charter district” and for a guarantee by the PSF under the Act of bonds issued on behalf of a charter district by a non-profit corporation. If the conditions for the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program are satisfied, the guarantee becomes effective upon approval of the bonds by the Attorney General and remains in effect until the guaranteed bonds are paid or defeased, by a refunding or otherwise.

As of February 21, 2018 (the most recent date for which data is available), the percentage of students enrolled in open-enrollment charter schools (excluding charter schools authorized by school districts) to the total State scholastic census was approximately 5.5%. As of late June, 2018, there were 185 active open-enrollment charter schools in the State and there were 747 charter school campuses operating under such charters (though as of such date, 38 of such campuses have not begun serving students for various reasons). Section 12.101, Texas Education Code, as amended by the Legislature in 2013, limits the number of charters that the Commissioner may grant to 215 charters as of the end of fiscal year 2014, with the number increasing in each fiscal year thereafter through 2019 to a total number of 305 charters. While legislation limits the number of charters that may be granted, it does not limit the number of campuses that may operate under a particular charter. For information regarding the capacity of the Guarantee Program, see “Capacity Limits for the Guarantee Program.” The Act provides that the Commissioner may not approve the guarantee of refunding or refinanced bonds under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program in a total amount that exceeds one-half of the total amount available for the guarantee of charter district bonds under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program.

In accordance with the Act, the Commissioner may not approve charter district bonds for guarantee if such guarantees will result in lower bond ratings for public school district bonds that are guaranteed under the School District Bond Guarantee Program. To be eligible for a guarantee, the Act provides that a charter district's bonds must be approved by the Attorney General, have an unenhanced investment grade rating from a nationally recognized investment rating firm, and satisfy a limited investigation conducted by the TEA.

The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program does not apply to the payment of principal and interest upon redemption of bonds, except upon mandatory sinking fund redemption, and does not apply to the obligation, if any, of a charter district to pay a redemption premium on its guaranteed bonds. The guarantee applies to all matured interest on guaranteed charter district bonds, whether the bonds were issued with a fixed or variable interest rate and whether the interest rate changes as a result of an interest reset provision or other bond resolution provision requiring an interest rate change. The guarantee does not extend to any obligation of a charter district under any agreement with a third party relating to guaranteed bonds that is defined or described in State law as a “bond enhancement agreement” or a

"credit agreement," unless the right to payment of such third party is directly as a result of such third party being a bondholder.

The Act provides that immediately following receipt of notice that a charter district will be or is unable to pay maturing or matured principal or interest on a guaranteed bond, the Commissioner is required to instruct the Comptroller to transfer from the Charter District Reserve Fund to the district's paying agent an amount necessary to pay the maturing or matured principal or interest. If money in the Charter District Reserve Fund is insufficient to pay the amount due on a bond for which a notice of default has been received, the Commissioner is required to instruct the Comptroller to transfer from the PSF to the district's paying agent the amount necessary to pay the balance of the unpaid maturing or matured principal or interest. If a total of two or more payments are made under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program on charter district bonds and the Commissioner determines that the charter district is acting in bad faith under the program, the Commissioner may request the Attorney General to institute appropriate legal action to compel the charter district and its officers, agents, and employees to comply with the duties required of them by law in regard to the guaranteed bonds. As is the case with the School District Bond Guarantee Program, the Act provides a funding "intercept" feature that obligates the Commissioner to instruct the Comptroller to withhold the amount paid with respect to the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, plus interest, from the first State money payable to a charter district that fails to make a guaranteed payment on its bonds. The amount withheld will be deposited, first, to the credit of the PSF, and then to restore any amount drawn from the Charter District Reserve Fund as a result of the non-payment.

The CDBGP Rules provide that the PSF may be used to guarantee bonds issued for the acquisition, construction, repair, or renovation of an educational facility for an open-enrollment charter holder and equipping real property of an open-enrollment charter school and/or to refinance promissory notes executed by an open-enrollment charter school, each in an amount in excess of \$500,000 the proceeds of which loans were used for a purposes described above (so-called new money bonds) or for refinancing bonds previously issued for the charter school that were approved by the attorney general (so-called refunding bonds). Refunding bonds may not be guaranteed under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program if they do not result in a present value savings to the charter holder.

The CDBGP Rules provide that an open-enrollment charter holder applying for charter district designation and a guarantee of its bonds under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program satisfy various provisions of the regulations, including the following: It must (i) have operated at least one open-enrollment charter school with enrolled students in the State for at least three years; (ii) agree that the bonded indebtedness for which the guarantee is sought will be undertaken as an obligation of all entities under common control of the open-enrollment charter holder, and that all such entities will be liable for the obligation if the open-enrollment charter holder defaults on the bonded indebtedness, provided, however, that an entity that does not operate a charter school in Texas is subject to this provision only to the extent it has received state funds from the open-enrollment charter holder; (iii) have had completed for the past three years an audit for each such year that included unqualified or unmodified audit opinions; and (iv) have received an investment grade credit rating within the last year. Upon receipt of an application for guarantee under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, the Commissioner is required to conduct an investigation into the financial status of the applicant charter district and of the accreditation status of all open-enrollment charter schools operated under the charter, within the scope set forth in the CDBGP Rules. Such financial investigation must establish that an applying charter district has a historical debt service coverage ratio, based on annual debt service, of at least 1.1 for the most recently completed fiscal year, and a projected debt service coverage ratio, based on projected revenues and expenses and maximum annual debt service, of at least 1.2. The failure of an open-enrollment charter holder to comply with the Act or the applicable regulations, including by making any material misrepresentations in the charter holder's application for charter district designation or guarantee under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, constitutes a material violation of the open-enrollment charter holder's charter.

Beginning in July 2015, TEA began limiting new guarantees under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program to conform to the Act and, subsequently, with CDBGP Rules that require the maintenance of a capacity reserve for the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program. Following the increase in the Program multiplier in February 2016 and the update of the percentage of students enrolled in open-enrollment charter schools to the total State scholastic census in March 2016, some new capacity became available under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, but that capacity was quickly exhausted. In accordance with the action of the SBOE on February 3, 2017, additional capacity for the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program became effective in two increments, implemented on March 1, 2017 and on September 1, 2017 (as described under "2017 Legislative Changes to the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program," an item to reverse the September 1, 2017 increase in the Program multiplier was approved by the SBOE at its Winter 2018 meeting). In addition, legislation enacted during the Legislature's 2017 regular session modifies the manner of calculating the capacity of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program (the "CDBGP Capacity"), which further increases the amount of the CDBGP Capacity, beginning with State fiscal year 2018, but that provision of the law does not increase overall Program capacity, it merely allocates capacity between the School District Bond

Guarantee Program and the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program. See “Capacity Limits for the Guarantee Program” and “2017 Legislative Changes to the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program.” Other factors that could increase the CDBGP Capacity include Fund investment performance, future increases in the Guarantee Program multiplier, changes in State law that govern the calculation of the CDBGP Capacity, as described below, growth in the relative percentage of students enrolled in open-enrollment charter schools to the total State scholastic census, legislative and administrative changes in funding for charter districts, changes in level of school district or charter district participation in the Program, or a combination of such circumstances.

2017 Legislative Changes to the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program

The CDBGP Capacity is established by the Act. During the 85th Texas Legislature, which concluded on May 29, 2017, Senate Bill 1480 (“SB 1480”) was enacted. The complete text of SB 1480 can be found at <http://www.capitol.state.tx.us/tlodocs/85R/billtext/pdf/SB01480F.pdf#navpanes=0>. SB 1480 modified how the CDBGP Capacity will be established under the Act effective as of September 1, 2017, and made other substantive changes to the Act that affects the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program. Prior to the enactment of SB 1480, the CDBGP Capacity was calculated as the State Capacity Limit less the amount of outstanding bond guarantees under the Guarantee Program multiplied by the percentage of charter district scholastic population relative to the total public school scholastic population. As of August 31, 2017, the amount of outstanding bond guarantees represented 66.57% of the State Capacity Limit for the Guarantee Program. SB 1480 amended the CDBGP Capacity calculation so that the State Capacity Limit is multiplied by the percentage of charter district scholastic population relative to the total public school scholastic population prior to the subtraction of the outstanding bond guarantees, thereby potentially substantially increasing the CDBGP Capacity. However, certain provisions of SB 1480, described below, and other additional factors described herein, could result in less than the maximum amount of the potential increase provided by SB 1480 being implemented by the SBOE or otherwise used by charter districts. Still other factors used in determining the CDBGP Capacity, such as the percentage of the charter district scholastic population to the overall public school scholastic population, could, in and of itself, increase the CDBGP Capacity, as that percentage has grown from 3.53% in September, 2012 to 5.5% in February 2018, representing a cumulative growth during that period of 56%. TEA is unable to predict how the ratio of charter district students to the total State scholastic population will change over time.

SB 1480 provides that the implementation of the new method of calculating the CDBGP Capacity will begin with the State fiscal year that commences September 1, 2021 (the State’s fiscal year 2022). However, for the intervening four fiscal years, beginning with fiscal year 2018, SB 1480 provides that the SBOE may establish a CDBGP Capacity that increases the amount of charter district bonds that may be guaranteed by up to a cumulative 20% in each fiscal year (for a total maximum increase of 80% in fiscal year 2021) as compared to the capacity figure calculated under the Act as of January 1, 2017. However, SB 1480 provides that in making its annual determination of the magnitude of an increase for any year, the SBOE may establish a lower (or no) increase if the SBOE determines that an increase in the CDBGP Capacity would likely result in a negative impact on the bond ratings for the Bond Guarantee Program (see “Ratings of Bonds Guaranteed Under the Guarantee Program”) or if one or more charter districts default on payment of principal or interest on a guaranteed bond, resulting in a negative impact on the bond ratings of the Bond Guarantee Program. The provisions of SB 1480 that provide for discretionary, incremental increases in the CDBGP expire September 1, 2022. If the SBOE makes a determination for any year based upon the potential ratings impact on the Bond Guarantee Program and modifies the increase that would otherwise be implemented under SB 1480 for that year, the SBOE may also make appropriate adjustments to the schedule for subsequent years to reflect the modification, provided that the CDBGP Capacity for any year may not exceed the limit provided in the schedule set forth in SB 1480. In September 2017 and June 2018, the SBOE authorized the full 20% increase in the amount of charter district bonds that may be guaranteed for fiscal years 2018 and 2019, respectively, which increases the relative capacity of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program to the School District Bond Guarantee Program for those fiscal years.

Taking into account the enactment of SB 1480 and the increase in the CDBGP Capacity effected thereby, at Winter 2018 meeting the SBOE approved the second of two required readings amending the SDBGP Rules to rollback the multiplier from 3.75 times market value to 3.50 times, and the rollback became effective in late March 2018.

In addition to modifying the manner of determining the CDBGP Capacity, SB 1480 provides that the Commissioner, in making a determination as to whether to approve a guarantee for a charter district, may consider any additional reasonable factor that the Commissioner determines to be necessary to protect the Bond Guarantee Program or minimize risk to the PSF, including: (1) whether the charter district had an average daily attendance of more than 75 percent of its student capacity for each of the preceding three school years, or for each school year of operation if the charter district has not been in operation for the preceding three school years; (2) the performance of the charter district under certain performance criteria set forth in Education Code Sections 39.053 and 39.054; and (3) any other indicator

of performance that could affect the charter district's financial performance. Also, SB 1480 provides that the Commissioner's investigation of a charter district application for guarantee may include an evaluation of whether the charter district bond security documents provide a security interest in real property pledged as collateral for the bond and the repayment obligation under the proposed guarantee. The Commissioner may decline to approve the application if the Commissioner determines that sufficient security is not provided. The Act and the CDBGP Rules previously required the Commissioner to make an investigation of the accreditation status and certain financial criteria for a charter district applying for a bond guarantee, which remain in place.

Since the initial authorization of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, the Act has established a bond guarantee reserve fund in the State treasury (the "Charter District Reserve Fund"). Formerly, the Act provided that each charter district that has a bond guaranteed must annually remit to the Commissioner, for deposit in the Charter District Reserve Fund, an amount equal to 10 percent of the savings to the charter district that is a result of the lower interest rate on its bonds due to the guarantee by the PSF. SB 1480 modified the Act insofar as it pertains to the Charter District Reserve Fund. Effective September 1, 2017, the Act provides that a charter district that has a bond guaranteed must remit to the Commissioner, for deposit in the Charter District Reserve Fund, an amount equal to 20 percent of the savings to the charter district that is a result of the lower interest rate on the bond due to the guarantee by the PSF. The amount due shall be paid on receipt by the charter district of the bond proceeds. However, the deposit requirement will not apply if the balance of the Charter District Reserve Fund is at least equal to three percent (3.00%) of the total amount of outstanding guaranteed bonds issued by charter districts. As of August 31, 2017, the Charter District Reserve Fund represented approximately 0.23% of the guaranteed charter district bonds. SB 1480 also authorized the SBOE to manage the Charter District Reserve Fund in the same manner as it manages the PSF. Previously, the Charter District Reserve Fund was held by the Comptroller, but effective April 1 2018, the management of the Reserve Fund was transferred to the PSF division of TEA, where it will be held and invested as a non-commingled fund under the administration of the PSF staff.

Charter District Risk Factors

Open-enrollment charter schools in the State may not charge tuition and, unlike school districts, charter districts have no taxing power. Funding for charter district operations is largely from amounts appropriated by the Legislature. The amount of such State payments a charter district receives is based on a variety of factors, including the enrollment at the schools operated by a charter district. The overall amount of education aid provided by the State for charter schools in any year is also subject to appropriation by the Legislature. The Legislature may base its decisions about appropriations for charter schools on many factors, including the State's economic performance. Further, because some public officials, their constituents, commentators and others have viewed charter schools as controversial, political factors may also come to bear on charter school funding, and such factors are subject to change.

Other than credit support for charter district bonds that is provided to qualifying charter districts by the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, under current law, open-enrollment charter schools generally do not receive a dedicated funding allocation from the State to assist with the construction and acquisition of new facilities. However, during the 85th Regular Session of the Legislature in 2017, legislation was enacted that, for the first time, provided a limited appropriation in the amount of \$60 million for the 2018-2019 biennium for charter districts having an acceptable performance rating. A charter district that receives funding under this program may use the funds to lease or pay property taxes imposed on an instructional facility; to pay debt service on bonds that financed an instructional facility; or for any other purpose related to the purchase, lease, sale, acquisition, or maintenance of an instructional facility. Charter schools generally issue revenue bonds to fund facility construction and acquisition, or fund facilities from cash flows of the school. Some charter districts have issued non-guaranteed debt in addition to debt guaranteed under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, and such non-guaranteed debt is likely to be secured by a deed of trust covering all or part of the charter district's facilities. In March 2017, the TEA began requiring charter districts to provide the TEA with a lien against charter district property as a condition to receiving a guarantee under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program. However, charter district bonds issued and guaranteed under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program prior to the implementation of the new requirement did not have the benefit of a security interest in real property, although other existing debts of such charter districts that are not guaranteed under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program may be secured by real property that could be foreclosed on in the event of a bond default.

The maintenance of a State-granted charter is dependent upon on-going compliance with State law and TEA regulations, and TEA monitors compliance with applicable standards. TEA has a broad range of enforcement and remedial actions that it can take as corrective measures, and such actions may include the loss of the State charter, the appointment of a new board of directors to govern a charter district, the assignment of operations to another charter operator, or, as a last resort, the dissolution of an open-enrollment charter school.

As described above, the Act includes a funding “intercept” function that applies to both the School District Bond Guarantee Program and the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program. However, school districts are viewed as the “educator of last resort” for students residing in the geographical territory of the district, which makes it unlikely that State funding for those school districts would be discontinued, although the TEA can require the dissolution and merger into another school district if necessary to ensure sound education and financial management of a school district. That is not the case with a charter district, however, and open-enrollment charter schools in the State have been dissolved by TEA from time to time. If a charter district that has bonds outstanding that are guaranteed by the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program should be dissolved, debt service on guaranteed bonds of the district would continue to be paid to bondholders in accordance with the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, but there would be no funding available for reimbursement of the PSF by the Comptroller for such payments. As described under “The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program,” the Act establishes a Charter District Reserve Fund, which could in the future be a significant reimbursement resource for the PSF. At May 31, 2018, the Charter District Reserve Fund contained \$5,104,222.

Potential Impact of Hurricane Harvey on the PSF

Hurricane Harvey struck coastal Texas on August 26, 2017, resulting in historic levels of rainfall. The Governor designated the impacted area for disaster relief, and TEA believes that the storm impacted more than 1.3 million students enrolled in some 157 school districts, and approximately 58,000 students in 27 charter schools in the designated area. Many of the impacted school districts and two charter districts have bonds guaranteed by the PSF. It is possible that the affected districts will need to borrow to repair or replace damaged facilities, which could require increased bond issuance and applications to the TEA for PSF bond guarantees. In addition, the storm damage and any lingering economic damage in the area could adversely affect the tax base (for school districts) and credit quality of school districts and charter districts with bonds that are or will be guaranteed by the PSF.

The TEA, members of the Legislature and the Governor, among others, have stated that they are developing programs to provide financial assistance to affected school districts and charter districts, particularly with regard to funding assistance for facility repairs and construction and to offset tax base and/or revenue loss to affected districts. The composition of any final programs that may be implemented cannot be predicted, and are likely to be subject to future State legislative and administrative actions, available amounts of federal and private disaster relief for affected schools, and other factors. TEA has initiated programs designed to hold school districts and charter districts harmless for the loss of State funding associated with declines in average daily attendance for fiscal year 2018. In the past, storm damage has caused multiple year impacts to affected schools with respect to both attendance figures and tax base (for school districts). In June 2018 TEA received results of a survey of tax appraisal districts in the area affected by the hurricane with respect to the impact of the hurricane on the tax rolls of affected school districts. In aggregate, the tax rolls of affected districts appear to have increased slightly for fiscal 2018 over 2017, but the increases were at a lower rate than had been anticipated in the State’s general appropriation act for the biennium. TEA notes that as of June 2018 the negative effect of the hurricane on the average daily attendance of districts in the affected area appears to have been less than TEA had initially anticipated.

Many of the school districts and two charter districts in the designated disaster area have bonds guaranteed by the PSF. TEA notes that no district has applied for financial exigency or failed to timely pay bond payments as a result of the hurricane or otherwise. The PSF is managed to maintain liquidity for any draws on the program. Moreover, as described under “The School District Bond Guarantee Program” and “The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program,” both parts of the Bond Guarantee Program operate in accordance with the Act as “intercept” programs, providing liquidity for guaranteed bonds, and draws on the PSF are required to be restored from the first State money payable to a school district or a charter district that fails to make a guaranteed payment on its bonds.

Ratings of Bonds Guaranteed Under the Guarantee Program

Moody’s Investors Service, S&P Global Ratings and Fitch Ratings rate bonds guaranteed by the PSF “Aaa,” “AAA” and “AAA,” respectively. Not all districts apply for multiple ratings on their bonds, however. See “OTHER PERTINENT INFORMATION – Municipal Bond Rating” herein.

[Remainder of page left blank intentionally.]

Valuation of the PSF and Guaranteed Bonds

Permanent School Fund Valuations

<u>Fiscal Year Ended 8/31</u>	<u>Book Value⁽¹⁾</u>	<u>Market Value⁽¹⁾</u>
2013	\$25,599,296,902	\$33,163,242,374
2014	27,596,692,541	38,445,519,225
2015	29,081,052,900	36,196,265,273
2016	30,128,037,903	37,279,799,335
2017 ⁽²⁾	31,870,581,428	41,438,672,573

⁽¹⁾ SLB managed assets are included in the market value and book value of the Fund. In determining the market value of the PSF from time to time during a fiscal year, the TEA uses current, unaudited values for TEA managed investment portfolios and cash held by the SLB. With respect to SLB managed assets shown in the table above, market values of land and mineral interests, internally managed real estate, investments in externally managed real estate funds and cash are based upon information reported to the PSF by the SLB. The SLB reports that information to the PSF on a quarterly basis. The valuation of such assets at any point in time is dependent upon a variety of factors, including economic conditions in the State and nation in general, and the values of these assets, and, in particular, the valuation of mineral holdings administered by the SLB, can be volatile and subject to material changes from period to period.

⁽²⁾ At August 31, 2017, mineral assets, sovereign and other lands and internally managed discretionary real estate, external discretionary real estate investments, domestic equities, and cash managed by the SLB had book values of approximately \$13.43 million, \$247.64 million, \$2,797.05 million, \$4.71 million, and \$3,399.05 million, respectively, and market values of approximately \$1,870.22 million, \$651.40 million, \$2,788.02 million, \$2.09 million, and \$3,399.05 million, respectively. At May 31, 2018, the PSF had a book value of \$33,178,779,673 and a market value of \$43,191,172,031. May 31, 2018 values are based on unaudited data, which is subject to adjustment.

Permanent School Fund Guaranteed Bonds

<u>At 8/31</u>	<u>Principal Amount⁽¹⁾</u>
2013	\$55,218,889,156
2014	58,364,350,783
2015	63,955,449,047
2016	68,303,328,445
2017	74,266,090,023 ⁽²⁾

⁽¹⁾ Represents original principal amount; does not reflect any subsequent accretions in value for compound interest bonds (zero coupon securities). The amount shown excludes bonds that have been refunded and released from the Guarantee Program. The TEA does not maintain records of the accreted value of capital appreciation bonds that are guaranteed under the Guarantee Program.

⁽²⁾ As of August 31, 2017 (the most recent date for which such data is available), the TEA expected that the principal and interest to be paid by school districts over the remaining life of the bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program was \$117,195,729,512, of which \$42,929,639,489 represents interest to be paid. As shown in the table above, at August 31, 2017, there were \$74,266,090,023 in principal amount of bonds guaranteed under the Guarantee Program and based on the cost value of the Fund at August 31, 2017 the capacity of the Guarantee Program at that date was \$111,568,711,072. The Program capacity at August 31, 2017 takes into account the increases in the cost value multiplier effective February 1, 2016 and March 1, 2017, which cumulatively increased the multiplier from 3 times to 3.50 times, but does not take into account the September 1, 2017 increase in the multiplier to 3.75 (which was subsequently reduced back to 3.50). Using the IRS Limit, which is the lower of the two federal and State capacity limits of Program capacity, of \$117,318,653,038, at August 31, 2017 98.28% of Program capacity was available to the School District Bond Guarantee Program and 1.72% was available to the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program.

[Remainder of page left blank intentionally.]

Permanent School Fund Guaranteed Bonds by Category⁽¹⁾

Fiscal Year Ended 8/31	<u>School District Bonds</u>		<u>Charter District Bonds</u>		<u>Totals</u>	
	No. of <u>Issues</u>	Principal <u>Amount</u>	No. of <u>Issues</u>	Principal <u>Amount</u>	No. of <u>Issues</u>	Principal <u>Amount</u>
2014 ⁽²⁾	2,869	\$58,061,805,783	10	\$302,545,000	2,879	\$58,364,350,783
2015	3,089	63,197,514,047	28	757,935,000	3,117	63,955,449,047
2016	3,244	67,342,303,445	35	961,025,000	3,279	68,303,328,445
2017 ⁽³⁾	3,253	72,884,480,023	40	1,381,610,000	3,293	74,266,090,023

⁽¹⁾ Represents original principal amount; does not reflect any subsequent accretions in value for compound interest bonds (zero coupon securities). The amount shown excludes bonds that have been refunded and released from the Guarantee Program.

⁽²⁾ Fiscal 2014 was the first year of operation of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program.

⁽³⁾ At May 31, 2018 (based on unaudited data, which is subject to adjustment), there were \$76,899,424,513 of bonds guaranteed under the Guarantee Program, representing 3,272 school district issues, aggregating \$75,492,649,513 in principal amount and 43 charter district issues, aggregating \$1,406,775,000 in principal amount. At May 31, 2018, the capacity allocation of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program was \$2,090,485,947 (based on the then effective capacity multiplier of 3.50 times and on unaudited data, which is subject to adjustment).

Discussion and Analysis Pertaining to Fiscal Year Ended August 31, 2017

The following discussion is derived from the Annual Report for the year ended August 31, 2017, including the Message of the Executive Administrator of the Fund and the Management's Discussion and Analysis contained therein. Reference is made to the Annual Report, when filed, for the complete Message and MD&A. Investment assets managed by the fifteen member SBOE are referred to throughout this MD&A as the PSF(SBOE) assets. As of August 31, 2017, the Fund's land, mineral rights and certain real assets are managed by the three-member SLB and these assets are referred to throughout as the PSF(SLB) assets. The current PSF asset allocation policy includes an allocation for real estate investments, and as such investments are made, and become a part of the PSF investment portfolio, those investments will be managed by the SBOE and not the SLB.

At the end of fiscal 2017, the Fund balance was \$41.4 billion, an increase of \$4.2 billion from the prior year. This increase is primarily due to overall increases in value of all asset classes in which the Fund has invested. During the year, the SBOE continued implementing the long term strategic asset allocation, diversifying the PSF(SBOE) to strengthen the Fund. The asset allocation is projected to increase returns over the long run while reducing risk and portfolio return volatility. The PSF(SBOE) annual rates of return for the one-year, five-year, and ten-year periods ending August 31, 2017, were 11.96%, 8.26% and 5.49%, respectively (total return takes into consideration the change in the market value of the Fund during the year as well as the interest and dividend income generated by the Fund's investments). In addition, the SLB continued its shift into externally managed real asset investment funds, and the one-year, three-year, and five-year annualized total returns for the PSF(SLB) real assets, including cash, were 10.35%, 7.19%, and 7.77%, respectively.

The market value of the Fund's assets is directly impacted by the performance of the various financial markets in which the assets are invested. The most important factors affecting investment performance are the asset allocation decisions made by the SBOE and SLB. The current SBOE long term asset allocation policy allows for diversification of the PSF(SBOE) portfolio into alternative asset classes whose returns are not as positively correlated as traditional asset classes. The implementation of the long term asset allocation will occur over several fiscal years and is expected to provide incremental total return at reduced risk. As of August 31, 2017, the PSF(SBOE) portion of the Fund had diversified into emerging market and large cap international equities, absolute return funds, real estate, private equity, risk parity, real return Treasury Inflation-Protected Securities, real return commodities, and emerging market debt.

As of August 31, 2017, the SBOE has approved and the Fund made capital commitments to externally managed real estate investment funds in a total amount of \$3.31 billion and capital commitments to private equity limited partnerships for a total of \$3.83 billion. Unfunded commitments at August 31, 2017, totaled \$1.35 billion in real estate investments and \$1.54 billion in private equity investments.

The PSF(SLB) portfolio is generally characterized by three broad categories: (1) discretionary real assets investments, (2) sovereign and other lands, and (3) mineral interests. Discretionary real assets investments consist of externally managed real estate, infrastructure, and energy/minerals investment funds; internally managed direct real estate investments, and cash. Sovereign and other lands consist primarily of the lands set aside to the PSF when it was created. Mineral interests

consist of all of the minerals that are associated with PSF lands. The investment focus of PSF(SLB) discretionary real assets investments has shifted from internally managed direct real estate investments to externally managed real assets investment funds. The PSF(SLB) makes investments in certain limited partnerships that legally commit it to possible future capital contributions. At August 31, 2017, the remaining commitments totaled approximately \$2.042 billion.

The PSF(SBOE)'s investment in domestic large cap, domestic small/mid cap, international large cap, and emerging market equity securities experienced returns of 16.30%, 12.80%, 19.04%, and 26.28%, respectively, during the fiscal year ended August 31, 2017. The PSF(SBOE)'s investment in domestic fixed income securities produced a return of 1.61% during the fiscal year and absolute return investments yielded a return of 7.32%. The PSF(SBOE) real estate and private equity investments returned 10.52% and 16.35%, respectively. Risk parity assets produced a return of 8.77%, while real return assets yielded 2.38%. Emerging market debt produced a return of 11.84%. Combined, all PSF(SBOE) asset classes produced an investment return of 11.96% for the fiscal year ended August 31, 2017, out-performing the benchmark index of 10.66% by approximately 130 basis points. All PSF(SLB) real assets (including cash) returned 10.35% for the fiscal year ending August 31, 2017.

For fiscal year 2017, total revenues, inclusive of unrealized gains and losses and net of security lending rebates and fees, totaled \$5.4 billion, an increase of \$2.7 billion from fiscal year 2016 earnings of \$2.7 billion. This increase reflects the performance of the securities markets in which the Fund was invested in fiscal year 2017. In fiscal year 2017, revenues earned by the Fund included lease payments, bonuses and royalty income received from oil, gas and mineral leases; lease payments from commercial real estate; surface lease and easement revenues; revenues from the resale of natural and liquid gas supplies; dividends, interest, and securities lending revenues; the net change in the fair value of the investment portfolio; and, other miscellaneous fees and income.

Expenditures are paid from the Fund before distributions are made under the total return formula. Such expenditures include the costs incurred by the SLB to manage the land endowment, as well as operational costs of the Fund, including external management fees paid from appropriated funds. Total operating expenditures, net of security lending rebates and fees, increased 30.6% for the fiscal year ending August 31, 2017. This increase is primarily attributable to an increase in PSF(SLB) operational costs and generally larger quantities of purchased gas for resale in the State Energy Management Program, which is administered by the SLB as part of the Fund.

The Fund supports the public school system in the State by distributing a predetermined percentage of its asset value to the ASF. For fiscal years 2016 and 2017, the distribution from the SBOE to the ASF totaled \$1.06 billion and \$1.06 billion, respectively. There was no contribution to the ASF by the SLB in fiscal year 2017.

At the end of the 2017 fiscal year, PSF assets guaranteed \$74.27 billion in bonds issued by 858 local school districts and charter districts, the latter of which entered into the Program during the 2014 fiscal year. Since its inception in 1983, the Fund has guaranteed 6,980 school district and charter district bond issues totaling \$166.3 billion in principal amount. During the 2017 fiscal year, the number of outstanding issues guaranteed under the Guarantee Program increased by 14, or 0.4%. The dollar amount of guaranteed school and charter bond issues outstanding increased by \$6.0 billion or 8.7%. The guarantee capacity of the Fund increased by \$13.9 billion, or 13.9%, during fiscal year 2017 due to continued growth in the cost basis of the Fund and the increase in the cost multiplier (from 3.25 to 3.50, as discussed above) used to calculate Program capacity.

2011 Constitutional Amendment

On November 8, 2011, a referendum was held in the State as a result of legislation enacted that year that proposed amendments to various sections of the Texas Constitution pertaining to the PSF. At that referendum, voters of State approved non-substantive changes to the Texas Constitution to clarify references to the Fund, and, in addition, approved amendments that effected an increase to the base amount used in calculating the Distribution Rate from the Fund to the ASF, and authorized the SLB to make direct transfers to the ASF, as described below.

The amendments approved at the referendum included an increase to the base used to calculate the Distribution Rate by adding to the calculation base certain discretionary real assets and cash in the Fund that is managed by entities other than the SBOE (at present, by the SLB). The value of those assets were already included in the value of the Fund for purposes of the Guarantee Program, but prior to the amendment had not been included in the calculation base for purposes of making transfers from the Fund to the ASF. While the amendment provided for an increase in the base for the calculation of approximately \$2 billion, no new resources were provided for deposit to the Fund. As described under "The Total Return Constitutional Amendment" the SBOE is prevented from approving a Distribution Rate or making a pay out from the Fund if the amount distributed would exceed 6% of the average of the market value of the Fund, excluding real property in the Fund, but including discretionary real asset investments on the last day of each of the sixteen State fiscal quarters preceding the Regular Session of the Legislature that begins before that State fiscal biennium or if such pay out would exceed the Ten Year Total Return.

If there are no reductions in the percentage established biennially by the SBOE to be the Distribution Rate, the impact of the increase in the base against which the Distribution Rate is applied will be an increase in the distributions from the PSF to the ASF. As a result, going forward, it may be necessary for the SBOE to reduce the Distribution Rate in order to preserve the corpus of the Fund in accordance with its management objective of preserving intergenerational equity.

The Distribution Rates for the Fund were set at 3.5%, 2.5%, 4.2%, 3.3% and 3.5% for each of two year periods 2008-2009, 2010-2011, 2012-2013, 2014-2015 and 2016-2017, respectively. In September 2017, the SBOE approved a \$2.5 billion distribution to the ASF for State fiscal biennium 2018-2019, to be made in equal monthly increments of \$102.99 million, which represents a 3.7% Distribution Rate for the biennium and a per student distribution of \$248.58, based on 2017 preliminary student average daily attendance of 4,971,656.277.

Changes in the Distribution Rate for each biennial period has been based on a number of financial and political reasons, as well as commitments made by the SLB in some years to transfer certain sums to the ASF. The new calculation base described above has been used to determine all payments to the ASF from the Fund beginning with the 2012-13 biennium. The broader base for the Distribution Rate calculation could increase transfers from the PSF to the ASF, although the effect of the broader calculation base has been somewhat offset since the 2014-2015 biennium by the establishment by the SBOE of somewhat lower Distribution Rates than for the 2012-2013 biennium. In addition, the changes made by the amendment that increased the calculation base that could affect the corpus of the Fund include the decisions that are made by the SLB or others that are, or may in the future be, authorized to make transfers of funds from the PSF to the ASF.

The constitutional amendments approved on November 8, 2011 also provide authority to the GLO or any other entity other than the SBOE that has responsibility for the management of land or other properties of the Fund to determine whether to transfer an amount each year from Fund assets to the ASF revenue derived from such land or properties, with the amount transferred limited to \$300 million. Any amount transferred to the ASF by an entity other than the SBOE is excluded from the 6% Distribution Rate limitation applicable to SBOE transfers.

Other Events and Disclosures

The State Investment Ethics Code governs the ethics and disclosure requirements for financial advisors and other service providers who advise certain State governmental entities, including the PSF. In accordance with the provisions of the State Investment Ethics Code, the SBOE periodically modifies its code of ethics, which occurred most recently in July 2016. The SBOE code of ethics includes prohibitions on sharing confidential information, avoiding conflict of interests and requiring disclosure filings with respect to contributions made or received in connection with the operation or management of the Fund. The code of ethics applies to members of the SBOE as well as to persons who are responsible by contract or by virtue of being a TEA PSF staff member for managing, investing, executing brokerage transactions, providing consultant services, or acting as a custodian of the PSF, and persons who provide investment and management advice to a member of the SBOE, with or without compensation under certain circumstances. The code of ethics is codified in the Texas Administrative Code at 19 TAC sections 33.5 et seq., and is available on the TEA web site at <http://ritter.tea.state.tx.us/rules/tac/chapter033/ch033a.htm#33.5>.

In addition, the GLO has established processes and controls over its administration of real estate transactions and is subject to provisions of the Texas Natural Resources Code and its own internal procedures in administering real estate transactions for assets it manages for the Fund. A report of the State Auditor released in March 2016 noted that based on an audit of certain real estate transactions managed by the GLO, during the period from September 2009 to May 2015, the GLO failed to comply with certain of such legal requirements relating to conflict of interest reporting, complying with written procedures and maintenance of documentation and other statutory and procedural requirements. That report, which includes the response of GLO management agreeing to the recommendations of the report, is available at <http://www.sao.texas.gov/reports/main/16-018.pdf>.

Since 2007, TEA has made supplemental appropriation requests to the Legislature for the purpose of funding the implementation of the 2008 Asset Allocation Policy, but those requests have been denied or partly funded. In the 2011 legislative session, the Legislature approved an increase of 31 positions in the full-time equivalent employees for the administration of the Fund, which was funded as part of an \$18 million appropriation for each year of the 2012-13 biennium, in addition to the operational appropriation of \$11 million for each year of the biennium. The TEA has begun increasing the PSF administrative staff in accordance with the 2011 legislative appropriation, and the TEA received an appropriation of \$30.0 million and \$30.2 million for the administration of the PSF for fiscal years 2014 and 2015, respectively, and \$30.2 million for each of the fiscal years 2016 and 2017.

As of August 31, 2017, certain lawsuits were pending against the State and/or the GLO, which challenge the Fund's title to certain real property and/or past or future mineral income from that property, and other litigation arising in the normal course of the investment activities of the PSF. Reference is made to the Annual Report, when filed, for a description of such lawsuits that are pending, which may represent contingent liabilities of the Fund.

PSF Continuing Disclosure Undertaking

The SBOE has adopted an investment policy rule (the "TEA Rule") pertaining to the PSF and the Guarantee Program. The TEA Rule is codified in Section I of the TEA Investment Procedure Manual, which relates to the Guarantee Program and is posted to the TEA web site at http://tea.texas.gov/Finance_and_Grants/Texas_Permanent_School_Fund/Texas_Permanent_School_Fund_Disclosure_Statement_-_Bond_Guarantee_Program/. The most recent amendment to the TEA Rule was adopted by the SBOE on November 19, 2010, and is summarized below. Through the adoption of the TEA Rule and its commitment to guarantee bonds, the SBOE has made the following agreement for the benefit of the issuers, holders and beneficial owners of guaranteed bonds. The TEA (or its successor with respect to the management of the Guarantee Program) is required to observe the agreement for so long as it remains an "obligated person," within the meaning of Rule 15c2-12, with respect to guaranteed bonds. Nothing in the TEA Rule obligates the TEA to make any filings or disclosures with respect to guaranteed bonds, as the obligations of the TEA under the TEA Rule pertain solely to the Guarantee Program. The issuer or an "obligated person" of the guaranteed bonds has assumed the applicable obligation under Rule 15c-12 to make all disclosures and filings relating directly to guaranteed bonds, and the TEA takes no responsibility with respect to such undertakings. Under the TEA agreement, the TEA will be obligated to provide annually certain updated financial information and operating data, and timely notice of specified material events, to the MSRB.

The MSRB has established the Electronic Municipal Market Access ("EMMA") system, and the TEA is required to file its continuing disclosure information using the EMMA system. Investors may access continuing disclosure information filed with the MSRB at www.emma.msrb.org, and the continuing disclosure filings of the TEA with respect to the PSF can be found at <https://emma.msrb.org/IssueView/Details/ER355077> or by searching for "Texas Permanent School Fund Bond Guarantee Program" on EMMA.

Annual Reports

The TEA will annually provide certain updated financial information and operating data to the MSRB. The information to be updated includes all quantitative financial information and operating data with respect to the Guarantee Program and the PSF of the general type included in this Official Statement under the heading "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM." The information also includes the Annual Report. The TEA will update and provide this information within six months after the end of each fiscal year.

The TEA may provide updated information in full text or may incorporate by reference certain other publicly-available documents, as permitted by Rule 15c2-12. The updated information includes audited financial statements of, or relating to, the State or the PSF, when and if such audits are commissioned and available. Financial statements of the State will be prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles as applied to state governments, as such principles may be changed from time to time, or such other accounting principles as the State Auditor is required to employ from time to time pursuant to State law or regulation. The financial statements of the Fund were prepared to conform to U.S. Generally Accepted Accounting Principles as established by the Governmental Accounting Standards Board.

The Fund is reported by the State of Texas as a permanent fund and accounted for on a current financial resources measurement focus and the modified accrual basis of accounting. Measurement focus refers to the definition of the resource flows measured. Under the modified accrual basis of accounting, all revenues reported are recognized based on the criteria of availability and measurability. Assets are defined as available if they are in the form of cash or can be converted into cash within 60 days to be usable for payment of current liabilities. Amounts are defined as measurable if they can be estimated or otherwise determined. Expenditures are recognized when the related fund liability is incurred.

The State's current fiscal year end is August 31. Accordingly, the TEA must provide updated information by the last day of February in each year, unless the State changes its fiscal year. If the State changes its fiscal year, the TEA will notify the MSRB of the change.

Material Event Notices

The TEA will also provide timely notices of certain events to the MSRB. Such notices will be provided not more than ten business days after the occurrence of the event. The TEA will provide notice of any of the following events with respect to the Guarantee Program: (1) principal and interest payment delinquencies; (2) non-payment related defaults, if such event is material within the meaning of the federal securities laws; (3) unscheduled draws on debt service reserves reflecting financial difficulties; (4) unscheduled draws on credit enhancements reflecting financial difficulties; (5) substitution of credit or liquidity providers, or their failure to perform; (6) adverse tax opinions, the issuance by the IRS of proposed or final determinations of taxability, Notices of Proposed Issue (IRS Form 5701-TEB), or other material notices or determinations with respect to the tax-exempt status of the Guarantee Program, or other material events affecting the tax status of the Guarantee Program; (7) modifications to rights of holders of bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program, if such event is material within the meaning of the federal securities laws; (8) bond calls, if such event is material within the meaning of the federal securities laws, and tender offers; (9) defeasances; (10) release, substitution, or sale of property securing repayment

of bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program, if such event is material within the meaning of the federal securities laws; (11) rating changes; (12) bankruptcy, insolvency, receivership, or similar event of the Guarantee Program (which is considered to occur when any of the following occur: the appointment of a receiver, fiscal agent, or similar officer for the Guarantee Program in a proceeding under the United States Bankruptcy Code or in any other proceeding under state or federal law in which a court or governmental authority has assumed jurisdiction over substantially all of the assets or business of the Guarantee Program, or if such jurisdiction has been assumed by leaving the existing governing body and officials or officers in possession but subject to the supervision and orders of a court or governmental authority, or the entry of an order confirming a plan of reorganization, arrangement, or liquidation by a court or governmental authority having supervision or jurisdiction over substantially all of the assets or business of the Guarantee Program); (13) the consummation of a merger, consolidation, or acquisition involving the Guarantee Program or the sale of all or substantially all of its assets, other than in the ordinary course of business, the entry into of a definitive agreement to undertake such an action or the termination of a definitive agreement relating to any such actions, other than pursuant to its terms, if material; and (14) the appointment of a successor or additional trustee with respect to the Guarantee Program or the change of name of a trustee, if such event is material within the meaning of the federal securities laws. (Neither the Act nor any other law, regulation or instrument pertaining to the Guarantee Program make any provision with respect to the Guarantee Program for bond calls, debt service reserves, credit enhancement, liquidity enhancement, early redemption or the appointment of a trustee with respect to the Guarantee Program.) In addition, the TEA will provide timely notice of any failure by the TEA to provide information, data, or financial statements in accordance with its agreement described above under "Annual Reports."

Availability of Information

The TEA has agreed to provide the foregoing information only to the MSRB and to transmit such information electronically to the MSRB in such format and accompanied by such identifying information as prescribed by the MSRB. The information is available from the MSRB to the public without charge at www.emma.msrb.org.

Limitations and Amendments

The TEA has agreed to update information and to provide notices of material events only as described above. The TEA has not agreed to provide other information that may be relevant or material to a complete presentation of its financial results of operations, condition, or prospects or agreed to update any information that is provided, except as described above. The TEA makes no representation or warranty concerning such information or concerning its usefulness to a decision to invest in or sell Bonds at any future date. The TEA disclaims any contractual or tort liability for damages resulting in whole or in part from any breach of its continuing disclosure agreement or from any statement made pursuant to its agreement, although holders of Bonds may seek a writ of mandamus to compel the TEA to comply with its agreement.

The continuing disclosure agreement of the TEA is made only with respect to the PSF and the Guarantee Program. The issuer of guaranteed bonds or an obligated person with respect to guaranteed bonds may make a continuing disclosure undertaking in accordance with Rule 15c2-12 with respect to its obligations arising under Rule 15c2-12 pertaining to financial and operating data concerning such entity and notices of material events relating to such guaranteed bonds. A description of such undertaking, if any, is included elsewhere in the Official Statement.

This continuing disclosure agreement may be amended by the TEA from time to time to adapt to changed circumstances that arise from a change in legal requirements, a change in law, or a change in the identity, nature, status, or type of operations of the TEA, but only if (1) the provisions, as so amended, would have permitted an underwriter to purchase or sell guaranteed bonds in the primary offering of such bonds in compliance with Rule 15c2-12, taking into account any amendments or interpretations of Rule 15c2-12 since such offering as well as such changed circumstances and (2) either (a) the holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program consent to such amendment or (b) a person that is unaffiliated with the TEA (such as nationally recognized bond counsel) determines that such amendment will not materially impair the interest of the holders and beneficial owners of the bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program. The TEA may also amend or repeal the provisions of its continuing disclosure agreement if the SEC amends or repeals the applicable provision of Rule 15c2-12 or a court of final jurisdiction enters judgment that such provisions of the Rule are invalid, but only if and to the extent that the provisions of this sentence would not prevent an underwriter from lawfully purchasing or selling bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program in the primary offering of such bonds.

Compliance with Prior Undertakings

During the last five years, the TEA has not failed to substantially comply with its previous continuing disclosure agreements in accordance with Rule 15c2-12.

SEC Exemptive Relief

On February 9, 1996, the TEA received a letter from the Chief Counsel of the SEC that pertains to the availability of the "small issuer exemption" set forth in paragraph (d)(2) of Rule 15c2-12. The letter provides that Texas school districts which offer municipal securities that are guaranteed under the Guarantee Program may undertake to comply with the provisions of paragraph (d)(2) of Rule 15c2-12 if their offerings otherwise qualify for such exemption, notwithstanding the guarantee of the school district securities under the Guarantee Program. Among other requirements established by Rule 15c2-12, a school district offering may qualify for the small issuer exemption if, upon issuance of the proposed series of securities, the school district will have no more than \$10 million of outstanding municipal securities.

AD VALOREM TAX PROCEDURES

Property Tax Code and County Wide Appraisal District

The Texas Tax Code (the "Tax Code") provides for county-wide appraisal and equalization of taxable property values and establishes in each county of the State an appraisal district and an appraisal review board responsible for appraising property for all taxable units within the county. The Burleson County Appraisal District (the "Appraisal District") is responsible for appraising property within the District as of January 1 of each year. The appraisal values set by the Appraisal District are subject to review and change by the Appraisal Review Board (the "Appraisal Review Board") which is appointed by the Appraisal District's Board of Directors. Such appraisal rolls, as approved by the Appraisal Review Board, are used by the District in establishing its tax roll and tax rate.

Ad Valorem Taxation

The Bonds are payable from an annual ad valorem tax levied on all taxable property within the District, without legal limit as to rate or amount. Reference is hereby made to the Tax Code for identification of property subject to taxation, property exempt or which may be exempted from taxation, the appraisal of property for taxation purposes, and the procedures and limitations applicable to the levy and collection of ad valorem taxes. Among other features, the Tax Code contains the following provisions with respect to the assessment of property and the levy and collection of ad valorem taxes:

- (1) a single appraisal district in each county to appraise property for taxation purposes for all taxing units located wholly or partly within the county;
- (2) subject to certain exceptions, all property to be assessed at 100% of its market value and the assessment of property on the basis of a percentage of its appraised value is prohibited;
- (3) requires an "effective tax rate" and "rollback tax rate" to be annually calculated and the holding of a referendum election whenever the proposed tax rate exceeds the roll back tax rate; and
- (4) the value of property is generally assessed for purposes of taxation on January 1 of each year and taxes levied each year generally become due and payable on October 1 and become delinquent on January 31 of the year following the year in which the taxes are imposed.

Taxable Property, Exemptions and Agricultural Exclusions

All real property located in the taxing unit and certain personal property is taxable property unless exempt by law. With certain exceptions, intangible personal property is not taxable property. Excluding open space land (ranch and farm land) and timberland that may be taxed on the basis of its productive capacity, property subject to taxation is to be taxed at 100% of its market value. In determining the market value of property, different methods of appraisal may be used, including the cost method of appraisal, the income method of appraisal and market data comparison method of appraisal, and the method considered most appropriate by the chief appraiser is to be used. The valuation of assessment of oil and gas reserves will depend upon pricing information in either the standard edition of the Annual Energy Outlook or, if the most recently published edition of the Annual Energy Outlook was published before December 1 of the preceding calendar year, the Short-Term Energy Outlook report published in January of the current calendar year by the United States Energy Information Administration in the price adjustment factor calculations. The State Comptroller of Public Accounts also develops and distributes manuals that specify formulas to be used in oil and gas calculations. State law requires the appraised value of a residence homestead to be based solely on the property's value as a residence homestead, regardless of whether residential use is considered to be the highest and best use of the property. State law further limits the appraised value of a residence homestead for a tax year to an amount not to exceed the lesser of (1) the market value of the property or (2) the sum of (a) 10% of the appraised value of the property for the last year in which the property was appraised for taxation times the number of years since the property was last appraised, plus (b) the appraised value of the property for the last year in which the property was appraised plus (c) the market value of all new improvements to the property.

Property exempt from taxation includes: (1) property owned and used for public purposes by the State of Texas or its political subdivisions; (2) property exempt by federal law; (3) family supplies, household goods and personal effects not held or used in the production of income; (4) certain property owned by charitable organizations, youth development associations, and religious organizations; (5) certain properties used for school purposes; (6) solar and wind-powered energy devices; (7) farm products, livestock, and poultry in the hands of the producer, and family supplies for home and farm use; (8) implements of husbandry used in the production of farm and ranch products; (9) personally owned automobiles (unless affirmatively provided to be taxed by taxing entity); and (10) property owned by disabled veterans or by the surviving spouse and surviving minor children of disabled veterans is exempt from taxation in amounts ranging from \$5,000 to \$12,000 depending on the disability rating of the veteran.

The Tax Code provides that a disabled veteran who receives from the United States Department of Veterans Affairs or its successor 100% disability compensation due to a service-connected disability and a rating of 100% disabled or of individual unemployability is entitled to an exemption from taxation of the total appraised value of the veteran's residence homestead. Furthermore, the surviving spouse of a deceased veteran who had received a disability rating of 100% when the disabled veteran died, or the surviving spouse of a disabled veteran who would have qualified for such exemption if such exemption had been in effect on the date the disabled veteran died, is entitled to receive a residential homestead exemption equal to the exemption received by the deceased spouse until such surviving spouse remarries.

Further, a partially disabled veteran or the surviving spouse of a partially disabled veteran, if such spouse has not remarried since the death of the disabled veteran and the property was the residence homestead of the surviving spouse when the disabled veteran died and remains the residence homestead of the surviving spouse, is entitled to an exemption equal to the percentage of the veteran's disability, if the residence homestead was donated to the disabled veteran by a charitable organization at no cost to the disabled veteran, or at some cost to the disabled veteran in the form of a cash payment, a mortgage, or both in an aggregate amount that is not more than 50% of the good faith estimate of the market value of the residence homestead made by the charitable organization as of the date the donation is made. Such exemption is transferable to a different residence homestead of the surviving spouse, if the surviving spouse has not remarried, in an amount equal to the exemption received on the prior residence homestead in the last year in which such exemption was received.

Also, the surviving spouse of a member of the armed forces who is killed in action is entitled to a property tax exemption for all or part of the market value of such surviving spouse's residence homestead, if the surviving spouse has not remarried since the service member's death and said property was the service member's residence homestead at the time of death. Such exemption is transferable to a different residence homestead of the surviving spouse, if the surviving spouse has not remarried, in an amount equal to the exemption received on the prior residence in the last year in which such exemption was received.

Following the approval by the voters at a November 7, 2017 statewide election (and effective as of January 1, 2018), the surviving spouse of a first responder who is killed or fatally injured in the line of duty is entitled to a property tax exemption for all or part of the market value of such surviving spouse's residence homestead, if the surviving spouse has not remarried since the first responder's death and said property was the first responder's residence homestead at the time of death. Such exemption is transferable to a different residence homestead of the surviving spouse, if the surviving spouse has not remarried, in an amount equal to the exemption received on the prior residence homestead in the last year in which such exemption was received.

A city may create, and a county may participate in, a tax increment financing district ("TIF") within the city or county with defined boundaries and establish a base value of taxable property in the TIF at the time of its creation. Overlapping taxing units, including school districts, may agree with the city to contribute all or part of future ad valorem taxes levied and collected against the "incremental value" (taxable value in excess of the base value) of taxable real property in the TIF to pay or finance the costs of certain public improvements in the TIF, and such taxes levied and collected for and on behalf of the TIF are not available for general use by such contributing taxing units. Effective September 1, 2001, school districts may not enter into tax abatement agreements under the general statute that permits cities and counties to initiate tax abatement agreements. In addition, credit will not be given by the Commissioner of Education in determining a district's property value wealth per student for (1) the appraised value, in excess of the "frozen" value, of property that is located in a TIF created after May 31, 1999 (except in certain limited circumstances where the municipality creating the tax increment financing zone gave notice prior to May 31, 1999 to all other taxing units that levy ad valorem taxes in the TIF of its intention to create the TIF and the TIF was created and had its final project and financing plan approved by the municipality prior to August 31, 1999), or (2) for the loss of value of abated property under any abatement agreement entered into after May 31, 1993. Notwithstanding the foregoing, in 2001 the Legislature enacted legislation known as the Texas Economic Development Act, which provides incentives for school districts to grant limitations on appraised property values and provide ad valorem tax credits to certain corporations and limited liability companies to encourage economic development within the district. Generally, during the last eight years of the ten-year term of a tax limitation agreement, the school district may only levy and collect ad valorem taxes for maintenance and operation purposes on the agreed-to limited appraised property value. The taxpayer is entitled to a tax credit from the school district for the amount of taxes imposed during the first two years of the tax limitation

agreement on the appraised value of the property above the agreed-to limited value. Additional State funding is provided to a school district for each year of such tax limitation in the amount of the tax credit provided to the taxpayer. During the first two years of a tax limitation agreement, the school district may not adopt a tax rate that exceeds the district's rollback tax rate (see "AD VALOREM TAX PROCEDURES - Public Hearing and Rollback Tax Rate").

Article VIII, Section 1-j of the Texas Constitution exempts from taxation goods, wares, merchandise, other tangible personal property and ores (other than oil, natural gas and other petroleum products) acquired or imported for assembling, storing, manufacturing, processing or fabricating purposes while such property is being detained in the State, and such property is to be forwarded outside the State within 175 days after the date of its acquisition or importation. Notwithstanding such exemption, counties, school districts, junior college districts and cities may tax such tangible personal property provided official action to tax is taken before April 1, 1990. The official action to tax such property can subsequently be rescinded and, if rescinded, such property shall thereafter be exempt from taxation.

Article VIII, Section 1-n of the Texas Constitution provides for the exemption from taxation of "goods-in-transit." "Goods-in-transit" is defined as personal property acquired or imported into Texas and transported to another location in the State or outside of the State within 175 days of the date the property was acquired or imported into Texas. The exemption excludes oil, natural gas, petroleum products, aircraft and special inventory, including motor vehicle, vessel and out-board motor, heavy equipment and manufactured housing inventory. The Tax Code provision permits local governmental entities, on a local option basis, to take official action by January 1 of the first year in which goods-in-transit are proposed to be taxed, and after holding a public hearing, to take official action to tax goods-in-transit during the following tax year and to continue to tax those goods until the action authorizing such taxation is rescinded or repealed. A taxpayer may receive only one of the freeport exemption, or the goods-in-transit exemption, for items of personal property. Senate Bill 1, passed by the 82nd Texas Legislature, 1st Called Session, requires again that the governmental entities take affirmative action prior to January 1 of the first tax years in which the governing body proposes to tax good-in-transit to continue its taxation of good-in-transit in the 2012 tax year and beyond.

Article VIII, Section 1-l of the Texas Constitution and State law, provide for the exemption from ad valorem taxation of certain property used to control the pollution of air, water, or land. A person is entitled to an exemption from taxation of all or part of real and personal property that the person owns and that is used wholly or partly as a facility, device or method for the control of air, water or land pollution.

With respect to school district taxation, \$25,000 of the market value of the residence homestead of an adult is exempt from taxation; and for persons 65 years of age or older and certain disabled persons, an additional exemption is granted not to exceed \$10,000 of the market value of the residence homestead of such persons. Furthermore, the total amount of taxes imposed on the residence homestead of persons 65 years of age or older (and receiving the additional \$10,000 exemption mentioned above) may not be increased while it remains the residence homestead of the person or that person's spouse who received the exemption, unless improvements (other than to comply with government requirements) are made to such homestead, and such freeze on ad valorem taxes on the homesteads of persons 65 years of age or older for general elementary and secondary public school purposes is also transferable to a different residence homestead. Also, the surviving spouse of a taxpayer who qualifies for the freeze on ad valorem taxes is entitled to the same exemption so long as (i) the taxpayer died in a year he or she qualified for the exemption, (ii) the surviving spouse is at least 55 years of age when the taxpayer died, and (iii) the property was the residence homestead of the surviving spouse when the taxpayer died and the property remains the residence homestead of the surviving spouse. On November 3, 2015, Texas voters approved an amendment to this law to provide for the exemption from ad valorem taxation for those surviving spouses of veterans who died before 2011, which such amendment applies for the tax year beginning on or after January 1, 2016.

Under Article VIII Section 1-b, of the Texas Constitution and State law, the governing body of a political subdivision, at its option, may grant an exemption of not less than \$3,000 of the market value of the residence homestead of persons 65 years of age or older or the disabled from all ad valorem taxes thereafter levied by the political subdivision.

Once authorized, such exemption may be repealed or decreased or increased in amount (i) by the governing body of the political subdivision or (ii) by a favorable vote of a majority of the qualified voters at an election called by the governing body of the political subdivision, which election must be called upon receipt of a petition signed by at least 20% of the number of qualified voters who voted in the preceding election of the political subdivision. In the case of a decrease, the amount of the exemption may not be reduced to less than \$3,000 of the market value.

The surviving spouse of an individual who qualifies for the foregoing exemption for the residence homestead of a person 65 or older (but not the disabled) is entitled to an exemption for the same property in an amount equal to that of the exemption for which the deceased spouse qualified if (i) the deceased spouse died in a year in which the deceased spouse qualified for the exemption, (ii) the surviving spouse was at least 55 years of age at the time of the death of the individual's spouse and (iii) the property was the residence homestead of the surviving spouse when the deceased spouse died and remains the residence homestead of the surviving spouse.

Under Article VIII Section 1-b, of the Texas Constitution and State law, in addition to any other exemptions provided by the Tax Code, the governing body of a political subdivision, at its option, may grant an exemption of up to 20% of the market value of residence homesteads, with a minimum exemption of \$5,000. Effective until December 31, 2019, the governing body of a political subdivision that adopted such exemption for the 2014 tax year (fiscal year 2015) may not reduce the amount of or repeal such exemption.

In the case of residence homestead exemptions granted under Section 1-b, Article VIII, ad valorem taxes may continue to be levied against the value of homesteads exempted where ad valorem taxes have previously been pledged for the payment of debt if cessation of the levy would impair the obligation of the contract by which the debt was created.

Levy and Collection of Taxes

The District is responsible for the collection of its taxes unless it elects to transfer such functions to another governmental agency. The tax rate consists of two components: (11) a rate for funding of maintenance and operation expenditures, and (12) a rate for debt service. Before adopting its annual tax rate, a public meeting must be held for the purpose of adopting a budget for the succeeding year. A notice of public meeting to discuss budget and proposed tax rate must be published in the time, format and manner prescribed in Section 44.004 of the Texas Education Code ("Section 44.004"). Section 44.004(e) provides a person who owns taxable property in a school district is entitled to an injunction restraining the collection of taxes by the district if the district has not complied with such notice requirements or the language and format requirements of such notice as set forth in Section 44.004(b), (c) and (d) and if such failure to comply was not in good faith. Section 44.004(e) further provides the action to enjoin the collection of taxes must be filed before the date the district delivers substantially all of its tax bills. Furthermore, Section 26.05 of the Tax Code provides the governing body of a taxing unit is required to adopt the annual tax rate for the unit before the later of September 30 or the 60th day after the date the certified appraisal roll is received by the taxing unit, and a failure to adopt a tax rate by such required date will result in the tax rate for the taxing unit for the tax year to be the lower of the effective tax rate calculated for that tax year or the tax rate adopted by the taxing unit for the preceding tax year.

Taxes are due October 1, or when billed, whichever is the later to occur, and such taxes become delinquent after January 31 of the following year. A delinquent tax incurs a penalty from six percent (6%) to twelve percent (12%) of the amount of the tax, depending on the time of payment, and interest accrues on the delinquent tax amount at the rate of one percent (1%) per month. If the tax is not paid by the following July 1, an additional penalty of up to twenty percent (20%) may be imposed by the District. Split payment of taxes owed, discounts for early payment and the postponement of the delinquency date of taxes under certain circumstances are also allowed under existing statutory authority. Certain taxpayers, including the disabled, persons 65 years or older and disabled veterans, who qualified for certain tax exemptions are permitted by State law to pay taxes on homesteads in four installments. If the tax delinquency date is February 1, the first installment must be paid before February 1 of each year and the final installment must be paid before August 1 of each year.

Public Hearing and Rollback Tax Rate

In setting its annual tax rate, the governing body of a school district generally cannot adopt a tax rate exceeding the district's "rollback tax rate" without approval by a majority of the voters voting at an election approving the higher rate. The tax rate consists of two components: (1) a rate for funding of maintenance and operation expenditures and (2) a rate for debt service. The rollback tax rate for a school district is the lesser of (A) the sum of (1) the product of the district's "State Compression Percentage" for that year multiplied by \$1.50, (2) the rate of \$0.04, (3) any rate increase above the rollback tax rate in prior years that were approved by voters, and (4) the district's current debt rate, or (B) the sum of (1) the district's effective maintenance and operations tax rate, (2) the product of the district's State Compression Percentage for that year multiplied by \$0.06; and (3) the district's current debt rate (see "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM" for a description of the "State Compression Percentage"). If for the preceding tax year a district adopted a maintenance and operation ("M&O") tax rate that was less than its effective M&O rate for that preceding tax year, the district's rollback tax for the current year is calculated as if the district had adopted an M&O tax rate for the preceding tax year equal to its effective M&O tax rate for that preceding tax year.

The "effective maintenance and operations tax rate" for a school district is the tax rate that, applied to the current tax values, would provide local maintenance and operating funds, when added to State funds to be distributed to the district pursuant to Chapter 42 of the Texas Education Code, as amended, for the school year beginning in the current tax year, in the same amount as would have been available to the district in the preceding year if the funding elements of wealth equalization and State funding for the current year had been in effect for the preceding year.

Section 26.05 of the Tax Code, as amended, provides that the governing body of a taxing unit is required to adopt the annual tax rate for the unit before the later of September 30 or the 60th day after the date the certified appraisal roll is received by the taxing unit, and a failure to adopt a tax rate by such required date will result in the tax rate for the taxing unit for the tax year to be the lower of the effective tax rate calculated for that tax year or the tax rate adopted by the taxing unit

for the preceding tax year. Before adopting its annual tax rate, a public meeting must be held for the purpose of adopting a budget for the succeeding year. A notice of public meeting to discuss budget and proposed tax rate must be published in the time, format and manner prescribed in Section 44.004, as amended. Section 44.004(e) provides that a person who owns taxable property in a school district is entitled to an injunction restraining the collection of taxes by the district if the district has not complied with such notice requirements or the language and format requirements of such notice as set forth in Section 44.004(b), (c) and (d), and, if applicable, subsection (i), and if such failure to comply was not in good faith. Section 44.004(e) further provides the action to enjoin the collection of taxes must be filed before the date the district delivers substantially all of its tax bills.

A district may adopt its budget after adopting a tax rate for the tax year in which the fiscal year covered by the budget begins if the district elects to adopt its tax rate before receiving the certified appraisal roll. A district that adopts a tax rate before adopting its budget must hold a public hearing on the proposed tax rate followed by another public hearing on the proposed budget rather than holding a single hearing on the two items.

The District's Rights in the Event of Tax Delinquencies

The District has no lien for unpaid taxes on personal property, but does have a lien granted by statute for unpaid taxes on real property that is discharged upon payment. Thereafter, no lien exists in favor of the District until it again levies taxes. In the event a taxpayer fails to make timely payment of taxes due to the District on real property, a penalty of 6% of unpaid taxes is incurred in February and 1% is added monthly until the penalty reaches 10%, after which it becomes a flat 12%.

In addition, delinquent taxes incur interest at the rate of 1% per month. The District may file suit for the collection thereof and may foreclose such lien in a foreclosure proceeding. The District may assess up to an additional 20% charge against delinquent taxes to defray the legal costs of collecting the delinquent taxes. Under certain circumstances, taxes which become delinquent on the homestead of a taxpayer 65 years old or older incurs a penalty of 8% per annum with no additional penalties or interest assessed. In general, property subject to the District's lien may be sold, in whole or in parcels, pursuant to court order to collect the amounts due.

Taxes levied by the District are a personal obligation of the owner of the property. On January 1 of each year, a tax lien attaches to property to secure the payment of all taxes, penalties and interest ultimately imposed for the year on the property. The lien exists in favor of the State of Texas and each taxing unit, including the District, having the power to tax the property. The District's tax lien is on a parity with tax liens of all other such taxing units. A tax lien on real property has priority over the claim of most creditors and other holders of liens on the property encumbered by the tax lien, whether or not the debt or lien existed before the attachment of the tax lien. Personal property under certain circumstances is subject to seizure and sale for the payment of delinquent taxes, penalty and interest. At any time after taxes on property become delinquent, the District may file suit to foreclose the lien securing payment of the tax, to enforce personal liability for the tax, or both. In filing a suit to foreclose a tax lien on real property, the District must join other taxing units that have claims for delinquent taxes against all or part of the same property. The ability of the District to collect delinquent taxes by foreclosure may be adversely affected by the amount of taxes owed to other taxing units, adverse market conditions, taxpayer redemption rights, or bankruptcy proceedings which restrain the collection of a taxpayer's debt. Federal bankruptcy law provides that an automatic stay of actions by creditors and other entities, including governmental units, goes into effect with the filing of any petition in bankruptcy. The automatic stay prevents governmental units from foreclosing on property and prevents liens for post-petition taxes from the bankruptcy court. In many cases post-petition taxes are paid as an administrative expense of the estate in bankruptcy or by order of the bankruptcy court.

The Texas Tax Code as Applied to the District

The Appraisal District has the responsibility for appraising property in the District as well as other taxing units in Burleson County.

The Appraisal District is governed by a board of seven directors appointed by members of the governing bodies of various political subdivisions within Burleson County.

Property within the District is assessed as of January 1 of each year, taxes become due October 1 of the same year and become delinquent on February 1 of the following year.

The District does not tax personal property not used in the production of income, such as personal automobiles.

The District does collect an additional 15% penalty to defray attorney costs in the collection of delinquent taxes over and above the penalty automatically assessed under the Tax Code.

The District's taxes are collected by Burleson County Tax Office.

The District does not allow split payments of taxes and does not give discounts for early payment of taxes.

The District does not participate in a tax increment financing zone. The District has not granted any tax abatements.

The District does not grant an additional local exemption of up to 20% of the market value of residence homesteads.

The District has not taken action to tax freeport property and goods-in-transit.

Charges for penalties and interest on the unpaid balance of delinquent taxes are as follows:

<u>Month</u>	<u>Cumulative Penalty</u>	<u>Cumulative Interest</u>	<u>Total</u>
February	6%	1%	7%
March	7%	2%	9%
April	8%	3%	11%
May	9%	4%	13%
June	10%	5%	15%
July	32% ^(a)	6%	38%

^(a) Includes attorney collection fee.

After July, penalty remains at 12%, and interest increases at the rate of 1% each month. In addition, if an account is delinquent in July, an additional penalty of up to 20% is assessed in order to defray attorney collection expenses.

STATE AND LOCAL FUNDING OF SCHOOL DISTRICTS IN TEXAS

Litigation Relating to the Texas Public School Finance System

On seven occasions in the last thirty years, the Texas Supreme Court (the “Court”) has issued decisions assessing the constitutionality of the Texas public school finance system (the “Finance System”). The litigation has primarily focused on whether the Finance System, as amended by the Texas Legislature (the “Legislature”) from time to time (i) met the requirements of article VII, section 1 of the Texas Constitution, which requires the Legislature to “establish and make suitable provision for the support and maintenance of an efficient system of public free schools,” or (ii) imposed a statewide ad valorem tax in violation of article VIII, section 1-e of the Texas Constitution because the statutory limit on property taxes levied by school districts for maintenance and operation purposes had allegedly denied school districts meaningful discretion in setting their tax rates. In response to the Court’s previous decisions, the Legislature enacted multiple laws that made substantive changes in the way the Finance System is funded in efforts to address the prior decisions declaring the Finance System unconstitutional.

On May 13, 2016, the Court issued its opinion in the most recent school finance litigation, *Morath v. The Texas Taxpayer & Student Fairness Coal.*, 490 S.W.3d 826 (Tex. 2016) (“Morath”). The plaintiffs and intervenors in the case had alleged that the Finance System, as modified by the Legislature in part in response to prior decisions of the Court, violated article VII, section 1 and article VIII, section 1-e of the Texas Constitution. In its opinion, the Court held that “[d]espite the imperfections of the current school funding regime, it meets minimum constitutional requirements.” The Court also noted that:

Lawmakers decide if laws pass, and judges decide if those laws pass muster. But our lenient standard of review in this policy-laden area counsels modesty. The judicial role is not to second-guess whether our system is optimal, but whether it is constitutional. Our Byzantine school funding “system” is undeniably imperfect, with immense room for improvement. But it satisfies minimum constitutional requirements.

Possible Effects of Litigation and Changes in Law on District Bonds

The Court’s decision in *Morath* upheld the constitutionality of the Finance System but noted that the Financing System was “undeniably imperfect”. While not compelled by the *Morath* decision to reform the Finance System, the Legislature could enact future changes to the Finance System. Any such changes could benefit or be a detriment to the District. If the Legislature enacts future changes to, or fails adequately to fund the Finance System, or if changes in circumstances otherwise provide grounds for a challenge, the Finance System could be challenged again in the future. In its 1995 opinion in *Edgewood Independent School District v. Meno*, 917 S.W.2d 717 (Tex. 1995), the Court stated that any future determination of unconstitutionality “would not, however, affect the district’s authority to levy the taxes necessary to retire previously issued bonds, but would instead require the Legislature to cure the system’s unconstitutionality in a way that is

consistent with the Contract Clauses of the U.S. and Texas Constitutions” (collectively, the “Contract Clauses”), which prohibit the enactment of laws that impair prior obligations of contracts.

Although, as a matter of law, the Bonds, upon issuance and delivery, will be entitled to the protections afforded previously existing contractual obligations under the Contract Clauses, the District can make no representations or predictions concerning the effect of future legislation, or any litigation that may be associated with such legislation, on the District’s financial condition, revenues or operations. While the enactment of future legislation to address school funding in Texas could adversely affect the financial condition, revenues or operations of the District, the District does not anticipate that the security for payment of the Bonds, specifically, the District’s obligation to levy an unlimited debt service tax and any Permanent School Fund guarantee of the Bonds would be adversely affected by any such legislation. See “CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM”.

CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM

The following language constitutes only a summary of the Finance System as it is currently structured. For a more complete description of school finance and fiscal management in the State, reference is made to Chapters 41 through 46 of the Texas Education Code, as amended.

Funding for school districts in the State is provided primarily from State and local sources. State funding for all school districts is provided through a set of funding formulas comprising the “Foundation School Program”, as well as two facilities funding programs. Generally, the Finance System is designed to promote wealth equalization among school districts by balancing State and local sources of funds available to school districts. In particular, because districts with relatively high levels of property wealth per student can raise more local funding, such districts receive less State aid, and in some cases, are required to disburse local funds to equalize their overall funding relative to other school districts. Conversely, because districts with relatively low levels of property wealth per student have limited access to local funding, the Finance System is designed to provide more State funding to such districts. Thus, as a school district’s property wealth per student increases, State funding to the school district is reduced. As a school district’s property wealth per student declines, the Finance System is designed to increase that district’s State funding. The Finance System provides a similar equalization system for facilities funding wherein districts with the same tax rate for debt service raise the same amount of combined State and local funding. Facilities funding for debt incurred in prior years is expected to continue in future years; however, State funding for new school facilities has not been consistently appropriated by the Texas Legislature, as further described below.

Local funding is derived from collections of ad valorem taxes levied on property located within each district’s boundaries. School districts are authorized to levy two types of property taxes: a limited maintenance and operations (“M&O”) tax to pay current expenses and an unlimited interest and sinking fund (“I&S”) tax to pay debt service on bonds. Generally, under current law, M&O tax rates are subject to a statutory maximum rate of \$1.17 per \$100 of taxable value for most school districts (although a few districts can exceed the \$1.17 limit as a result of authorization approved in the 1960s). Current law also requires school districts to demonstrate their ability to pay debt service on outstanding indebtedness through the levy of an ad valorem I&S tax at a rate of not to exceed \$0.50 per \$100 of taxable property at the time bonds are issued. Once bonds are issued, however, districts may levy an I&S tax to pay debt service on such bonds unlimited as to rate or amount (see “TAX RATE LIMITATIONS” herein).

As noted above, because property values vary widely among school districts, the amount of local funding generated by the same tax rate is also subject to wide variation among school districts.

Local Funding for School Districts

The primary source of local funding for school districts is collections from ad valorem taxes levied against taxable property located in each school district. Prior to reform legislation that became effective during the 2006-2007 fiscal year (the “Reform Legislation”), the maximum M&O tax rate for most school districts was generally limited to \$1.50 per \$100 of taxable value. At the time the Reform Legislation was enacted, the majority of school districts were levying an M&O tax rate of \$1.50 per \$100 of taxable value. The Reform Legislation required each school district to “compress” its tax rate by an amount equal to the “State Compression Percentage.” The State Compression Percentage is set by legislative appropriation for each State fiscal biennium or, in the absence of legislative appropriation, by the Commissioner. For the 2018-19 State fiscal biennium, the State Compression Percentage has been set at 66.67%, effectively setting the maximum compressed M&O tax rate for most school districts at \$1.00 per \$100 of taxable value. School districts are permitted, however, to generate additional local funds by raising their M&O tax rate by up to \$0.04 above the compressed tax rate without voter approval (for most districts, up to \$1.04 per \$100 of taxable value). In addition, if the voters approve a tax rate increase through a local referendum, districts may, in general, increase their M&O tax rate up to a maximum M&O tax rate of \$1.17 per \$100 of taxable value and receive State equalization funds for such taxing effort (see “AD VALOREM TAX PROCEDURES – Public Hearing and Rollback Tax Rate” herein). Elections authorizing the levy of M&O taxes held in certain school districts

under older laws, however, may subject M&O tax rates in such districts to other limitations (see "TAX RATE LIMITATIONS" herein).

State Funding for School Districts

State funding for school districts is provided through the Foundation School Program, which provides each school district with a minimum level of funding (a "Basic Allotment") for each student in average daily attendance ("ADA"). The Basic Allotment is calculated for each school district using various weights and adjustments based on the number of students in average daily attendance and also varies depending on each district's compressed tax rate. This Basic Allotment formula determines most of the allotments making up a district's basic level of funding, referred to as "Tier One" of the Foundation School Program. The basic level of funding is then "enriched" with additional funds known as "Tier Two" of the Foundation School Program. Tier Two provides a guaranteed level of funding for each cent of local tax effort that exceeds the compressed tax rate (for most districts, M&O tax rates above \$1.00 per \$100 of taxable value). The Finance System also provides an Existing Debt Allotment ("EDA") to subsidize debt service on eligible outstanding school district bonds, an Instructional Facilities Allotment ("IFA") to subsidize debt service on newly issued bonds, and a New Instructional Facilities Allotment ("NIFA") to subsidize operational expenses associated with the opening of a new instructional facility. IFA primarily addresses the debt service needs of property-poor school districts. In 2017, the 85th Texas Legislature appropriated funds in the amount of \$1,378,500,000 for the 2018-19 State fiscal biennium for the EDA, IFA, and NIFA.

Tier One and Tier Two allotments represent the State's share of the cost of M&O expenses of school districts, with local M&O taxes representing the district's local share. EDA and IFA allotments supplement a school district's local I&S taxes levied for debt service on eligible bonds issued to construct, acquire and improve facilities. Tier One and Tier Two allotments and existing EDA and IFA allotments are generally required to be funded each year by the Texas Legislature. Since future-year IFA awards were not funded by the Texas Legislature for the 2018-19 State fiscal biennium and debt service assistance on school district bonds that are not yet eligible for EDA is not available, debt service on new bonds issued by districts to construct, acquire and improve facilities must be funded solely from local I&S taxes.

Tier One allotments are intended to provide all districts a basic level of education necessary to meet applicable legal standards. Tier Two allotments are intended to guarantee each school district that is not subject to the wealth transfer provisions described below an opportunity to supplement that basic program at a level of its own choice; however, Tier Two allotments may not be used for the payment of debt service or capital outlay.

As described above, the cost of the basic program is based on an allotment per student known as the "Basic Allotment". For the 2018-19 State fiscal biennium, the Basic Allotment is \$5,140 for each student in average daily attendance. The Basic Allotment is then adjusted for all districts by several different weights to account for inherent differences between school districts. These weights consist of (i) a cost adjustment factor intended to address varying economic conditions that affect teacher hiring known as the "cost of education index", (ii) district-size adjustments for small and mid-size districts, and (iii) an adjustment for the sparsity of the district's student population. The cost of education index, district-size and population sparsity adjustments, as applied to the Basic Allotment, create what is referred to as the "Adjusted Allotment". The Adjusted Allotment is used to compute a "regular program allotment", as well as various other allotments associated with educating students with other specified educational needs.

Tier Two supplements the basic funding of Tier One and provides two levels of enrichment with different guaranteed yields (i.e., guaranteed levels of funding by the State) depending on the district's local tax effort. The first six cents of tax effort that exceeds the compressed tax rate (for most districts, M&O tax rates ranging from \$1.00 to \$1.06 per \$100 of taxable value) will, for most districts, generate the a guaranteed yield of \$99.41 and \$106.28 per cent per weighted student in average daily attendance ("WADA") in the 2017-18 and 2018-19 State fiscal years, respectively. The second level of Tier Two is generated by tax effort that exceeds the district's compressed tax rate plus six cents (for most districts eligible for this level of funding, M&O tax rates ranging from \$1.06 to \$1.17 per \$100 of taxable value) and has a guaranteed yield per cent per WADA of \$31.95 for the 2018-19 State fiscal biennium. Property-wealthy school districts that have an M&O tax rate that exceeds the district's compressed tax rate plus six cents are subject to recapture above this tax rate level at the equivalent wealth per student of \$319,500 (see "Wealth Transfer Provisions" below).

Previously, a district with a compressed tax rate below \$1.00 per \$100 of taxable value (known as a "fractionally funded district") received a Basic Allotment which was reduced proportionately to the degree that the district's compressed tax rate fell short of \$1.00. Beginning in the 2017-2018 fiscal year, the compressed tax rate of a fractionally funded district now includes the portion of such district's current M&O tax rate in excess of the first six cents above the district's compressed tax rate until the district's compressed tax rate is equal to the state maximum compressed tax rate of \$1.00. Thus, for fractionally funded districts, each eligible one cent of M&O tax levy above the district's compressed tax rate plus six cents will have a guaranteed yield based on Tier One funding instead of the Tier Two yield, thereby reducing the penalty against the Basic Allotment.

In addition to the operations funding components of the Foundation School Program discussed above, the Foundation School Program provides a facilities funding component consisting of the Instructional Facilities Allotment (IFA) program and the Existing Debt Allotment (EDA) program. These programs assist school districts in funding facilities by, generally, equalizing a district's I&S tax effort. The IFA guarantees each awarded school district a specified amount per student (the "IFA Guaranteed Yield") in State and local funds for each cent of tax effort to pay the principal of and interest on eligible bonds issued to construct, acquire, renovate or improve instructional facilities. The guaranteed yield per cent of local tax effort per student in ADA has been \$35 since this program first began in 1997. New awards of IFA are only available if appropriated funds are allocated for such purpose by the State Legislature. To receive an IFA award, in years where the State Legislature allocates appropriated funds for new IFA awards, a school district must apply to the Commissioner in accordance with rules adopted by the Commissioner before issuing the bonds to be paid with IFA state assistance. The total amount of debt service assistance over a biennium for which a district may be awarded is limited to the lesser of (1) the actual debt service payments made by the district in the biennium in which the bonds are issued; or (2) the greater of (a) \$100,000 or (b) \$250 multiplied by the number of students in ADA. The IFA is also available for lease-purchase agreements and refunding bonds meeting certain prescribed conditions. Once a district receives an IFA award for bonds, it is entitled to continue receiving State assistance for such bonds without reapplying to the Commissioner. The guaranteed level of State and local funds per student per cent of local tax effort applicable to the bonds may not be reduced below the level provided for the year in which the bonds were issued. The 85th State Legislature did not appropriate any funds for new IFA awards for the 2018-2019 State fiscal biennium; however, awards previously granted in years the State Legislature did appropriate funds for new IFA awards will continue to be funded. State financial assistance is provided for certain existing eligible debt issued by school districts through the EDA program. The EDA guaranteed yield (the "EDA Yield") was the same as the IFA Guaranteed Yield (\$35 per cent of local tax effort per student in ADA). The 85th Texas Legislature changed the EDA Yield to the lesser of (i) \$40 or a greater amount for any year provided by appropriation; or (ii) the amount that would result in a total additional EDA of \$60 million more than the EDA to which districts would have been entitled to if the EDA Yield were \$35. The yield for the 2017-2018 fiscal year is approximately \$37. The portion of a district's local debt service rate that qualifies for EDA assistance is limited to the first 29 cents of debt service tax (or a greater amount for any year provided by appropriation by the Texas Legislature). In general, a district's bonds are eligible for EDA assistance if (i) the district made payments on the bonds during the final fiscal year of the preceding State fiscal biennium, or (ii) the district levied taxes to pay the principal of and interest on the bonds for that fiscal year. Each biennium, access to EDA funding is determined by the debt service taxes collected in the final year of the preceding biennium. A district may not receive EDA funding for the principal and interest on a series of otherwise eligible bonds for which the district receives IFA funding.

A district may also qualify for a NIFA allotment, which provides assistance to districts for operational expenses associated with opening new instructional facilities. The 85th Texas Legislature appropriated funds in the amount of \$23,750,000 for each of the 2017-18 and 2018-19 State fiscal years for NIFA allotments.

2006 Legislation

Since the enactment of the Reform Legislation in 2006, most school districts in the State have operated with a "target" funding level per student ("Target Revenue") that is based upon the "hold harmless" principles embodied in the Reform Legislation. This system of Target Revenue was superimposed on the Foundation School Program and made existing funding formulas substantially less important for most school districts. The Reform Legislation was intended to lower M&O tax rates in order to give school districts "meaningful discretion" in setting their M&O tax rates, while holding school districts harmless by providing them with the same level of overall funding they received prior to the enactment of the Reform Legislation. To make up for this shortfall, the Reform Legislation authorized Additional State Aid for Tax Reduction ("ASATR") for each school district in an amount equal to the difference between the amount that each district would receive under the Foundation School Program and the amount of each district's Target Revenue funding level. However, in subsequent legislative sessions, the Texas Legislature has gradually reduced the reliance on ASATR by increasing the funding formulas, and beginning with the 2017-18 school year, the statutes authorizing ASATR are repealed (eliminating revenue targets and ASATR funding).

2017 Legislation

The 85th Texas Legislature, including the regular session which concluded on May 29, 2017 and the special session which concluded on August 15, 2017, did not enact substantive changes to the Finance System. However, certain bills during the regular session and House Bill 21, which was passed during the special session and signed by the Governor on August 16, 2017, revised certain aspects of the formulas used to determine school district entitlements under the Finance System. In addition to amounts previously discussed, the 85th Texas Legislature additionally appropriated funds to (i) establish a Financial Hardship Transition Program, which provides grants ("Hardship Grants") to those districts which were heavily reliant on ASATR funding, and (ii) provide an Adjustment for Rapid Decline in Taxable Value of Property ("DPV Decline Adjustment") for districts which experienced a decline in their tax base of more than four percent for tax years 2015 and 2016. A district may receive either a Hardship Grant or a DPV Decline Adjustment, but cannot receive both. In a case where a district would have been eligible to receive funding under both programs, the district will receive the greater of the two amounts.

Wealth Transfer Provisions

Some districts have sufficient property wealth per student in WADA ("wealth per student") to generate their statutory level of funding through collections of local property taxes alone. Districts whose wealth per student generates local property tax collections in excess of their statutory level of funding are referred to as "Chapter 41" districts because they are subject to the wealth equalization provisions contained in Chapter 41 of the Texas Education Code. Chapter 41 districts may receive State funds for certain competitive grants and a few programs that remain outside the Foundation School Program. Otherwise, Chapter 41 districts are not eligible to receive State funding. Furthermore, Chapter 41 districts must exercise certain options in order to reduce their wealth level to equalized wealth levels of funding, as determined by formulas set forth in the Reform Legislation. For most Chapter 41 districts, this equalization process entails paying the portion of the district's local taxes collected in excess of the equalized wealth levels of funding to the State (for redistribution to other school districts) or directly to other school districts with a wealth per student that does not generate local funds sufficient to meet the statutory level of funding, a process known as "recapture".

The equalized wealth levels that subject Chapter 41 districts to recapture for the 2018-2019 State fiscal biennium are set at (i) \$514,000 per student in WADA with respect to that portion of a district's M&O tax effort that does not exceed its compressed tax rate (for most districts, the first \$1.00 per \$100 of taxable value) and (ii) \$319,500 per WADA with respect to that portion of a district's M&O tax effort that is beyond its compressed rate plus \$.06 (for most districts, M&O taxes levied above \$1.06 per \$100 in taxable value). So long as the State's equalization program under Chapter 42 of the Texas Education Code is funded to provide tax revenue equivalent to that raised by the Austin Independent School District on the first six pennies of tax effort that exceed the compressed tax rate, then M&O taxes levied above \$1.00 but at or below \$1.06 per \$100 of taxable value ("Golden Pennies") are not subject to the wealth equalization provisions of Chapter 41. Because funding at the Austin Independent School District level is currently being provided to school districts under Chapter 42 of the Texas Education Code, no recapture is currently associated with the Golden Pennies. Chapter 41 districts with a wealth per student above the lower equalized wealth level but below the higher equalized wealth level must equalize their wealth only with respect to the portion of their M&O tax rate, if any, in excess of \$1.06 per \$100 of taxable value.

Under Chapter 41, a district has five options to reduce its wealth per student so that it does not exceed the equalized wealth levels: (1) a district may consolidate by agreement with one or more districts to form a consolidated district; all property and debt of the consolidating districts vest in the consolidated district; (2) a district may detach property from its territory for annexation by a property-poor district; (3) a district may purchase attendance credits from the State; (4) a district may contract to educate nonresident students from a property-poor district by sending money directly to one or more property-poor districts; or (5) a district may consolidate by agreement with one or more districts to form a consolidated taxing district solely to levy and distribute either M&O taxes or both M&O taxes and I&S taxes. A Chapter 41 district may also exercise any combination of these remedies. Options (3), (4) and (5) require prior approval by the Chapter 41 district's voters.

A district may not adopt a tax rate until its effective wealth per student is at or below the equalized wealth level. If a district fails to exercise a permitted option, the Commissioner must reduce the district's property wealth per student to the equalized wealth level by detaching certain types of property from the district and annexing the property to a property-poor district or, if necessary, consolidate the district with a property-poor district. Provisions governing detachment and annexation of taxable property by the Commissioner do not provide for assumption of any of the transferring district's existing debt. The Commissioner has not been required to detach property in the absence of a district failing to select another wealth-equalization option.

THE SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM AS APPLIED TO THE DISTRICT

The District's wealth per student for the 2017-18 school year is less than the equalized wealth value. Accordingly, the District has not been required to exercise one of the permitted wealth equalization options. As a district with wealth per student less than the equalized wealth value, the District may benefit in the future by agreeing to accept taxable property or funding assistance from or agreeing to consolidate with a property-rich district to enable such district to reduce its wealth per student to the permitted level.

A district's wealth per student must be tested for each future school year and, if it exceeds the maximum permitted level, must be reduced by exercise of one of the permitted wealth equalization options. Accordingly, if the District's wealth per student should exceed the maximum permitted level in future school years, it will be required each year to exercise one or more of the wealth reduction options. If the District were to consolidate (or consolidate its tax base for all purposes) with a property-poor district, the outstanding debt of each district could become payable from the consolidated district's combined property tax base, and the District's ratio of taxable property to debt could become diluted. If the District were to detach property voluntarily, a portion of its outstanding debt (including the Bonds) could be assumed by the district to which the property is annexed, in which case timely payment of the Bonds could become dependent in part on the financial performance of the annexing district.

TAX RATE LIMITATIONS

A school district is authorized to levy M&O taxes subject to approval of a proposition submitted to district voters under Section 45.003(d) of the Texas Education Code, as amended. The maximum M&O tax rate that may be levied by a district cannot exceed the voted maximum rate or the maximum rate described in the succeeding paragraphs. The maximum voted M&O tax rate for the District is \$1.50 per \$100 of assessed valuation as approved by the voters at an election held on February 20, 1965 under Chapter 20, Texas Education Code (now codified at Section 45.003, Texas Education Code).

The maximum tax rate per \$100 of assessed valuation that may be adopted by the District may not exceed the lesser of (A) \$1.50 and (B) the sum of (1) the rate of \$0.17, and (2) the product of the State Compression Percentage multiplied by \$1.50. The State Compression Percentage has been set, and will remain, at 66.67% for the 2018-19 State fiscal biennium. The State Compression Percentage is set by legislative appropriation for each State fiscal biennium or, in the absence of legislative appropriation, by the Commissioner. For a more detailed description of the State Compression Percentage, see "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM – Local Funding for School Districts". Furthermore, a school district cannot annually increase its tax rate in excess of the district's "rollback tax rate" without submitting such tax rate to a referendum election and a majority of the voters voting at such election approving the adopted rate. See "AD VALOREM TAX PROCEDURES – Public Hearing and Rollback Tax Rate".

A school district is also authorized to issue bonds and levy taxes for payment of bonds subject to voter approval of one or more propositions submitted to the voters under Section 45.003(b)(1), Texas Education Code, as amended, which provides a tax unlimited as to rate or amount for the support of school district bonded indebtedness (see "THE BONDS – Security for Payment").

Section 45.0031, Texas Education Code, as amended ("Section 45.0031"), requires a district to demonstrate to the Texas Attorney General that it has the prospective ability to pay its maximum annual debt service on a proposed issue of bonds and all previously issued bonds, other than bonds approved by district voters at an election held on or before April 1, 1991 and issued before September 1, 1992 (or debt issued to refund such bonds, collectively, "exempt bonds"), from a tax levied at a rate of \$0.50 per \$100 of assessed valuation before bonds may be issued. In demonstrating the ability to pay debt service at a rate of \$0.50, a district may take into account EDA and IFA allotments to the district, which effectively reduce the district's local share of debt service, and may also take into account Tier One funds allotted to the district. The District is required to deposit any State allotments provided solely for payment of debt service into the District's interest and sinking fund upon receipt of such amounts. In addition, the District must, prior to levying an interest and sinking fund tax rate that exceeds \$0.50 per \$100 of assessed valuation, credit to the interest and sinking fund other State assistance, including Tier One funds that may be used for either operating purposes or for payment of debt service, in an amount equal to the amount needed to demonstrate compliance with the threshold tax rate test and which is received or to be received in that year. Once the prospective ability to pay such tax has been shown and the bonds are issued, a district may levy an unlimited tax to pay debt service. Taxes levied to pay refunding bonds issued pursuant to Chapter 1207, Texas Government Code, are not subject to the \$0.50 tax rate test; however, taxes levied to pay debt service on such bonds (other than bonds issued to refund exempt bonds) are included in maximum annual debt service for calculation of the \$0.50 threshold tax rate test when applied to subsequent bond issues. The Bonds are issued for school building purposes pursuant to Chapter 45, Texas Education Code as new debt and are subject to the threshold tax rate test. Under current law, a district may demonstrate its ability to comply with the \$0.50 threshold tax rate test by applying the \$0.50 tax rate to an amount equal to 90% of projected future taxable value of property in the district, as certified by a registered professional appraiser, anticipated for the earlier of the tax year five years after the current tax year or the tax year in which the final payment for the bonds is due. However, if a district uses projected future taxable values to meet the \$0.50 threshold tax rate test and subsequently imposes a tax at a rate greater than \$0.50 per \$100 of valuation to pay for bonds subject to the test, then for subsequent bond issues, the Texas Attorney General must find that the district has the projected ability to pay principal and interest on the proposed bonds and all previously issued bonds subject to the \$0.50 threshold tax rate test from a tax rate of \$0.45 per \$100 of valuation. The District has not used State assistance other than EDA or IFA allotment funding or projected property values to satisfy this threshold test.

DEBT LIMITATIONS

Under State law, there is no explicit bonded indebtedness limitation, although the tax rate limits described above under "TAX RATE LIMITATIONS" effectively impose a limit on the incurrence of debt. Such tax rate limits require school districts to demonstrate the ability to pay "new debt" from a tax rate of \$0.50. In demonstrating compliance with the requirement, a district may take into account State equalization payments and, if compliance with such requirement is contingent on receiving state assistance, a district may not adopt a tax rate for a year for purposes of paying the principal of and interest on the bonds unless the district credits to the interest and sinking fund for the bonds the amount of State assistance received or to be received in that year. The State Attorney General reviews a district's calculations showing the compliance with such test as a condition to the legal approval of the debt. As stated above, the Bonds are issued for school building purposes pursuant to Chapter 45, Texas Education Code, as amended, as new debt and therefore are subject to this limitation.

EMPLOYEE BENEFITS, RETIREMENT PLAN AND OTHER POST-EMPLOYMENT BENEFITS

The District contributes to the Teacher Retirement System of Texas (the "System"), a public employee retirement system. It is a cost-sharing, multiple-employer defined benefit pension plan with one exception: all risks and costs are not share by the District, but are the liability of the State of Texas. The System provides service retirement and disability retirement benefits, and death benefits to plan members and beneficiaries. The System operates primarily under the provisions of the Texas Constitution and Texas Government Code, Title 8, Subtitle C. See "Notes to the Financial Statements – Note J – Pension Plan" as set out in the audited financial statements of the District for the year ended August 31, 2017 as set forth in APPENDIX C hereto.

The District contributes to the Texas Public School Retired Employees Group Insurance Program ("TRS-Care"), a cost-sharing multiple-employer defined benefit post-employment health care plan administered by the TRS. TRS-Care provides health care coverage for certain persons (and their dependents) who retired under TRS. See "Notes to the Financial Statements, Note K.1 –Retiree Health Care Plans, TRS Care" in the audited financial statements of the District for the year ended August 31, 2017 as set forth in APPENDIX C hereto.

In June 2012, the Government Accounting Standards Board ("GASB") issued Statement No. 68 *Accounting and Financial Reporting for Pensions*, which was later amended by GASB Statement No. 71 *Pension Transition for Contributions Made Subsequent to the Measurement Date*, each in an effort to improve accounting and financial reporting by state and local governments related to pensions. GASB Statement No. 68 requires reporting entities, such as the District, to recognize their proportionate share of the net pension liability and operating statement activity related to changes in collective pension liability. Reporting entities, such as the District, that contribute to the TRS pension plan will report a liability on the face of their government-wide financial statements. Such reporting began with the District's fiscal year ending August 31, 2015. See Table 11 in APPENDIX A herein. GASB Statement No. 68 applies only to pension benefits and does not apply to OPB or TRS-Care related liabilities. At the conclusion of the 2016-17 fiscal year, the District had a net pension liability of \$1,005,806.

Formal collective bargaining agreements relating directly to wages and other conditions of employment are prohibited by State law, as are strikes by teachers. There are various local, state and national organized employee groups who engage in efforts to better terms and conditions of employment of school employees. Some districts have adopted a policy to consult with employer groups with respect to certain terms and conditions of employment. Some examples of these groups are the Texas State Teachers Association, the Texas Classroom Teachers Association, the Association of Texas Professional Educators and the National Education Association.

INVESTMENT POLICIES

The District invests its funds in investments authorized by Texas law in accordance with investment policies approved by the Board. Both Texas law and the District's investment policies are subject to change.

Legal Investments

Under Texas law, the District is authorized to invest in (1) obligations including letters of credit of the United States or its agencies and instrumentalities, including the Federal Home Loan Banks; (2) direct obligations of the State of Texas or its agencies and instrumentalities; (3) collateralized mortgage obligations directly issued by a federal agency or instrumentality of the United States, the underlying security for which is guaranteed by an agency or instrumentality of the United States; (4) other obligations, the principal and interest of which is guaranteed or insured by or backed by the full faith and credit of, the State of Texas or the United States or their respective agencies and instrumentalities, including obligations that are fully guaranteed or insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation or by the explicit full faith and credit of the United States; (5) obligations of states, agencies, counties, cities, and other political subdivisions of any state rated as to investment quality by a nationally recognized investment rating firm not less than A or its equivalent; (6) bonds issued, assumed or guaranteed by the State of Israel; (7) interest-bearing banking deposits that are guaranteed or insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation or its successor, or the National Credit Union Share Insurance Fund or its successor; (8) interest-bearing banking deposits other than those described by clause (7) if (A) the funds invested in the banking deposits are invested through: (i) a broker with a main office or branch office in this state that the investing entity selects from a list the governing body or designated investment committee of the entity adopts as required by Section 2256.025, Texas Government Code; or (ii) a depository institution with a main office or branch office in this state that the investing entity selects; (B) the broker or depository institution selected as described by (A) above arranges for the deposit of the funds in the banking deposits in one or more federally insured depository institutions, regardless of where located, for the investing entity's account; (C) the full amount of the principal and accrued interest of the banking deposits is insured by the United States or an instrumentality of the United States; and (D) the investing entity appoints as the entity's custodian of the banking deposits issued for the entity's account: (i) the depository institution selected as described by (A) above; (ii) an entity described by Section 2257.041(d), Texas Government Code; or (iii) a clearing broker dealer registered with the Securities

and Exchange Commission and operating under Securities and Exchange Commission Rule 15c3-3; (9) certificates of deposit or share certificates (i) meeting the requirements of the Texas Public Funds Investment Act (Chapter 2256, Texas Government Code) that are issued by or through an institution that either has its main office or a branch in Texas, and are guaranteed or insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation or the National Credit Union Share Insurance Fund or their respective successors, or are secured as to principal by obligations described in clauses (1) through (8) or in any other manner and amount provided by law for District deposits or, (ii) where (a) the funds are invested by the District through (I) a broker that has its main office or a branch office in the State of Texas and is selected from a list adopted by the District as required by law or (II) a depository institution that has its main office or a branch office in the State of Texas that is selected by the District; (b) the broker or the depository institution selected by the District arranges for the deposit of the funds in certificates of deposit in one or more federally insured depository institutions, wherever located, for the account of the District; (c) the full amount of the principal and accrued interest of each of the certificates of deposit is insured by the United States or an instrumentality of the United States, and (d) the District appoints the depository institution selected under (a) above, an entity as described by Section 2257.041(d) of the Texas Government Code, or a clearing broker-dealer registered with the Securities and Exchange Commission and operating pursuant to Securities and Exchange Commission Rule 15c3-3 (17 C.F.R. Section 240.15c3-3) as custodian for the District with respect to the certificates of deposit issued for the account of the District; (10) fully collateralized repurchase agreements that have a defined termination date, are secured by a combination of cash and obligations described in clause (1), require the securities being purchased by the District or cash held by the District to be pledged to the District, held in the District's name, and deposited at the time the investment is made with the District or with a third party selected and approved by the District, and are placed through a primary government securities dealer, as defined by the Federal Reserve, or a financial institution doing business in the State; (11) certain bankers' acceptances with the remaining term of 270 days or less, if the short-term obligations of the accepting bank or its parent are rated at least A-1 or P-1 or the equivalent by at least one nationally recognized credit rating agency; (12) commercial paper with a stated maturity of 270 days or less that is rated at least A-1 or P-1 or the equivalent by either (a) two nationally recognized credit rating agencies or (b) one nationally recognized credit rating agency if the paper is fully secured by an irrevocable letter of credit issued by a U.S. or state bank; (13) no-load money market mutual funds registered with and regulated by the Securities and Exchange Commission that provide the investing entity with a prospectus and other information required by the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 or the Investment Company Act of 1940 and that comply with federal Securities and Exchange Commission Rule 2a-7 (17 C.F.R. Section 270.2a-7), promulgated under the Investment Company Act of 1940 (15 U.S.C. Section 80a-1 et seq.); and (14) no-load mutual funds registered with the Securities and Exchange Commission that have an average weighted maturity of less than two years, and either (a) have a duration of one year or more and invest exclusively in obligations described in this paragraph, or (b) a duration of less than one year and the investment portfolio is limited to investment grade securities, excluding asset-backed securities. In addition, bond proceeds may be invested in guaranteed investment contracts that have a defined termination date and are secured by obligations, including letters of credit, of the United States or its agencies and instrumentalities in an amount at least equal to the amount of bond proceeds invested under such contract, other than the prohibited obligations described below.

Governmental bodies in the State are authorized to implement securities lending programs if (i) the securities loaned under the program are 100% collateralized, a loan made under the program allows for termination at any time and a loan made under the program is either secured by (a) obligations that are described in clauses (1) through (8) above, (b) irrevocable letters of credit issued by a state or national bank that is continuously rated by a nationally recognized investment rating firm at not less than A or its equivalent or (c) cash invested in obligations described in clauses (1) through (8) above, clauses (12) through (14) above, or an authorized investment pool; (ii) securities held as collateral under a loan are pledged to the District, held in the District's name and deposited at the time the investment is made with the District or a third party designated by the District; (iii) a loan made under the program is placed through either a primary government securities dealer or a financial institution doing business in the State of Texas; and (iv) the agreement to lend securities has a term of one year or less.

The District may invest in such obligations directly or through government investment pools that invest solely in such obligations provided that the pools are rated no lower than AAA or AAAM or an equivalent by at least one nationally recognized rating service. The District may also contract with an investment management firm registered under the Investment Advisers Act of 1940 (15 U.S.C. Section 80b-1 et seq.) or with the State Securities Board to provide for the investment and management of its public funds or other funds under its control for a term up to two years, but the District retains ultimate responsibility as fiduciary of its assets. In order to renew or extend such a contract, the District must do so by order, ordinance, or resolution.

The District is specifically prohibited from investing in: (1) obligations whose payment represents the coupon payments on the outstanding principal balance of the underlying mortgage-backed security collateral and pays no principal; (2) obligations whose payment represents the principal stream of cash flow from the underlying mortgage-backed security and bears no interest; (3) collateralized mortgage obligations that have a stated final maturity of greater than 10 years; and (4) collateralized mortgage obligations the interest rate of which is determined by an index that adjusts opposite to the changes in a market index.

Investment Policies

Under Texas law, the District is required to invest its funds under written investment policies that primarily emphasize safety of principal and liquidity; that address investment diversification, yield, maturity, and the quality and capability of investment management; and that includes a list of authorized investments for District funds, the maximum allowable stated maturity of any individual investment, the maximum average dollar-weighted maturity allowed for pooled fund groups, methods to monitor the market price of investments acquired with public funds, a requirement for settlement of all transactions, except investment pool funds and mutual funds, on a delivery versus payment basis, and procedures to monitor rating changes in investments acquired with public funds and the liquidation of such investments consistent with the Public Funds Investment Act. All District funds must be invested consistent with a formally adopted "Investment Strategy Statement" that specifically addresses each fund's investment. Each Investment Strategy Statement will describe its objectives concerning: (1) suitability of investment type, (2) preservation and safety of principal, (3) liquidity, (4) marketability of each investment, (5) diversification of the portfolio, and (6) yield.

Under Texas law, District investments must be made "with judgment and care, under prevailing circumstances, that a person of prudence, discretion, and intelligence would exercise in the management of the person's own affairs, not for speculation, but for investment, considering the probable safety of capital and the probable income to be derived". At least quarterly the investment officers of the District shall submit an investment report detailing: (1) the investment position of the District, (2) that all investment officers jointly prepared and signed the report, (3) the beginning market value, any additions and changes to market value and the ending value of each pooled fund group, (4) the book value and market value of each separately listed asset at the beginning and end of the reporting period, (5) the maturity date of each separately invested asset, (6) the account or fund or pooled fund group for which each individual investment was acquired, and (7) the compliance of the investment portfolio as it relates to: (a) adopted investment strategy statements and (b) state law. No person may invest District funds without express written authority from the Board of Trustees.

Additional Provisions

Under Texas law, the District is additionally required to: (1) annually review its adopted policies and strategies; (2) adopt an order or resolution stating that it has reviewed its investment policy and investment strategies and records any changes made to either its investment policy or investment strategy in the said order or resolution; (3) require any investment officers with personal business relationships or relatives with firms seeking to sell securities to the entity to disclose the relationship and file a statement with the Texas Ethics Commission and the Board of Trustees; (4) require the qualified representative of firms offering to engage in an investment transaction with the District to: (a) receive and review the District's investment policy, (b) acknowledge that reasonable controls and procedures have been implemented to preclude investment transactions conducted between the District and the business organization that are not authorized by the District's investment policy (except to the extent that this authorization is dependent on an analysis of the makeup of the District's entire portfolio or requires an interpretation of subjective investment standards), and (c) deliver a written statement in a form acceptable to the District and the business organization attesting to these requirements; (5) perform an annual audit of the management controls on investments and adherence to the District's investment policy; (6) provide specific investment training for the Treasurer, Chief Financial Officer and investment officers; (7) restrict reverse repurchase agreements to not more than 90 days and restrict the investment of reverse repurchase agreement funds to no greater than the term of the reverse purchase agreement; (8) restrict the investment in on-money market mutual funds in the aggregate to no more than 15% of the entity's monthly average fund balance, excluding bond proceeds and reserves and other funds held for debt service; (9) require local government investment pools to conform to the new disclosure, rating, net asset value, yield calculation, and advisory board requirements; and (10) at least annually review, revise, and adopt a list of qualified brokers that are authorized to engage in investment transactions with the District.

LEGAL MATTERS

Legal Opinion

The District will furnish the Underwriter a transcript of certain proceedings incident to the authorization and issuance of the Bonds. Such transcript will include a certified copy of the approving opinion of the Attorney General of the State of Texas, as recorded in the Bond Register of the Comptroller of Public Accounts of the State of Texas, to the effect that the Bonds are valid and legally binding obligations of the District. The District will also furnish the approving legal opinion of Bond Counsel to the effect that (i), based upon an examination of such transcript, the Bonds are valid and legally binding obligations of the District under the Constitution and the laws of the State of Texas, except to the extent that enforcement of the rights and remedies of the registered owners of the Bonds may be limited by laws relating to bankruptcy, reorganization or other similar laws of general application affecting the rights of creditors of political subdivisions such as the District and (ii) the interest on the Bonds will be excludable from gross income for federal income tax purposes under Section 103(a) of the Code, subject to the matters described under "TAX MATTERS" herein. See "APPENDIX D – FORM OF BOND COUNSEL'S OPINION." Bond Counsel was not requested to participate, and did not take part, in the preparation

of the Official Statement, and such firm has not assumed any responsibility with respect thereto or undertaken independently to verify any of the information contained therein, except that, in its capacity as Bond Counsel, such firm has reviewed the information describing the Bonds in the Official Statement under the captions "THE BONDS," (except for the subcaptions "Permanent School Fund Guarantee," "Default and Remedies," "Payment Record" and "Future Issues"), "REGISTRATION, TRANSFER AND EXCHANGE," "STATE AND LOCAL FUNDING OF SCHOOL DISTRICTS IN TEXAS," "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM," "TAX RATE LIMITATIONS," "LEGAL MATTERS – Legal Opinions" (except for the last three sentences thereof), "TAX MATTERS," "LEGAL INVESTMENTS AND ELIGIBILITY TO SECURE PUBLIC FUNDS IN TEXAS," "CONTINUING DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION" (except for the subcaption "Compliance with Prior Undertakings") and "OTHER INFORMATION – Registration and Qualifications of Bonds for Sale" to determine that the information relating to the Bonds and the Order contained therein fairly and accurately describes the provisions thereof and is correct as to matters of law. The legal fees to be paid Bond Counsel for services rendered in connection with the issuance of the Bonds are contingent on the sale and delivery of the Bonds. The applicable legal opinion will accompany the Bonds deposited with DTC or will be printed on or attached to the Bonds in the event of discontinuance of the Book-Entry-Only System. In connection with the issuance of the Bonds, Bond Counsel has been engaged by, and only represents, the District. Certain legal matters will be passed upon for the Underwriter by Bracewell LLP, Austin, Texas. The various legal opinions to be delivered concurrently with the delivery of the Bonds express the professional judgment of the attorneys rendering the opinions as to the legal issues explicitly addressed therein. In rendering a legal opinion, the attorney does not become an insurer or guarantor of the expression of professional judgment, of the transaction opined upon, or of the future performance of the parties to the transaction, nor does the rendering of an opinion guarantee the outcome of any legal dispute that may arise out of the transaction.

Litigation

In the opinion of various officials of the District, except as disclosed in this Official Statement, there is no litigation or other proceeding pending against or, to their knowledge, threatened against the District in any court, agency, or administrative body (either state or federal) wherein an adverse decision would materially adversely affect the financial condition of the District.

At the time of the initial delivery of the Bonds, the District will provide the Underwriter with a certificate to the effect that no litigation of any nature has been filed or is then pending challenging the issuance of the Bonds or that affects the payment and security of the Bonds or in any other manner questioning the issuance, sale, or delivery of the Bonds.

TAX MATTERS

In the opinion of Orrick, Herrington & Sutcliffe LLP, Bond Counsel ("Bond Counsel"), based upon an analysis of existing laws, regulations, rulings and court decisions, and assuming, among other matters, the accuracy of certain representations and compliance with certain covenants, interest on the Bonds is excluded from gross income for federal income tax purposes under Section 103 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986 (the "Code"). Bond Counsel is of the further opinion that interest on the Bonds is not a specific preference item for purposes of the federal alternative minimum tax. A complete copy of the proposed form of opinion of Bond Counsel is set forth in Appendix D hereto.

To the extent the issue price of any maturity of the Bonds is less than the amount to be paid at maturity of such Bonds (excluding amounts stated to be interest and payable at least annually over the term of such Bonds), the difference constitutes "original issue discount," the accrual of which, to the extent properly allocable to each Beneficial Owner thereof, is treated as interest on the Bonds which is excluded from gross income for federal income tax purposes. For this purpose, the issue price of a particular maturity of the Bonds is the first price at which a substantial amount of such maturity of the Bonds is sold to the public (excluding bond houses, brokers, or similar persons or organizations acting in the capacity of underwriters, placement agents or wholesalers). The original issue discount with respect to any maturity of the Bonds accrues daily over the term to maturity of such Bonds on the basis of a constant interest rate compounded semiannually (with straight-line interpolations between compounding dates). The accruing original issue discount is added to the adjusted basis of such Bonds to determine taxable gain or loss upon disposition (including sale, redemption, or payment on maturity) of such Bonds. Beneficial Owners of the Bonds should consult their own tax advisors with respect to the tax consequences of ownership of Bonds with original issue discount, including the treatment of Beneficial Owners who do not purchase such Bonds in the original offering to the public at the first price at which a substantial amount of such Bonds is sold to the public.

Bonds purchased, whether at original issuance or otherwise, for an amount higher than their principal amount payable at maturity (or, in some cases, at their earlier call date) ("Premium Bonds") will be treated as having amortizable bond premium. No deduction is allowable for the amortizable bond premium in the case of obligations, like the Premium Bonds, the interest on which is excluded from gross income for federal income tax purposes. However, the amount of tax-exempt interest received, and a Beneficial Owner's basis in a Premium Bond, will be reduced by the amount of amortizable bond premium

properly allocable to such Beneficial Owner. Beneficial Owners of Premium Bonds should consult their own tax advisors with respect to the proper treatment of amortizable bond premium in their particular circumstances.

The Code imposes various restrictions, conditions and requirements relating to the exclusion from gross income for federal income tax purposes of interest on obligations such as the Bonds. The District has made certain representations and covenanted to comply with certain restrictions, conditions and requirements designed to ensure that interest on the Bonds will not be included in federal gross income. Inaccuracy of these representations or failure to comply with these covenants may result in interest on the Bonds being included in gross income for federal income tax purposes, possibly from the date of original issuance of the Bonds. The opinion of Bond Counsel assumes the accuracy of these representations and compliance with these covenants. Bond Counsel has not undertaken to determine (or to inform any person) whether any actions taken (or not taken), or events occurring (or not occurring), or any other matters coming to Bond Counsel's attention after the date of issuance of the Bonds may adversely affect the value of, or the tax status of interest on, the Bonds. Accordingly, the opinion of Bond Counsel is not intended to, and may not, be relied upon in connection with any such actions, events or matters.

Although Bond Counsel is of the opinion that interest on the Bonds is excluded from gross income for federal income tax purposes, the ownership or disposition of, or the accrual or receipt of amounts treated as interest on, the Bonds may otherwise affect a Beneficial Owner's federal, state or local tax liability. The nature and extent of these other tax consequences depends upon the particular tax status of the Beneficial Owner or the Beneficial Owner's other items of income or deduction. Bond Counsel expresses no opinion regarding any such other tax consequences.

Current and future legislative proposals, if enacted into law, clarification of the Code or court decisions may cause interest on the Bonds to be subject, directly or indirectly, in whole or in part, to federal income taxation or otherwise prevent Beneficial Owners from realizing the full current benefit of the tax status of such interest. The introduction or enactment of any such legislature proposals or clarification of the Code or court decisions may also affect, perhaps significantly, the market price for, or marketability of, the Bonds. Prospective purchasers of the Bonds should consult their own tax advisors regarding the potential impact of any pending or proposed federal or state tax legislation, regulations or litigation, as to which Bond Counsel is expected to express no opinion.

The opinion of Bond Counsel is based on current legal authority, covers certain matters not directly addressed by such authorities, and represents Bond Counsel's judgment as to the proper treatment of the Bonds for federal income tax purposes. It is not binding on the Internal Revenue Service ("IRS") or the courts. Furthermore, Bond Counsel cannot give and has not given any opinion or assurance about the future activities of the District or about the effect of future changes in the Code, the applicable regulations, the interpretation thereof or the enforcement thereof by the IRS. The District has covenanted, however, to comply with the requirements of the Code.

Bond Counsel's engagement with respect to the Bonds ends with the issuance of the Bonds, and, unless separately engaged, Bond Counsel is not obligated to defend the District or the Beneficial Owners regarding the tax-exempt status of the Bonds in the event of an audit examination by the IRS. Under current procedures, parties other than the District and its appointed counsel, including the Beneficial Owners, would have little, if any, right to participate in the audit examination process. Moreover, because achieving judicial review in connection with an audit examination of tax-exempt bonds is difficult, obtaining an independent review of IRS positions with which the District legitimately disagrees, may not be practicable. Any action of the IRS, including but not limited to selection of the Bonds for audit, or the course or result of such audit, or an audit of bonds presenting similar tax issues may affect the market price for, or the marketability of, the Bonds, and may cause the District or the Beneficial Owners to incur significant expense.

The District has designated the Bonds as "qualified tax-exempt obligations" within the meaning of Section 265(b)(3)(B) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended. Pursuant to that section of the Code, a qualifying financial institution will be allowed a deduction from its own federal corporate income tax for the portion of interest expense the financial institution is able to allocate to designated "bank-qualified" investments.

LEGAL INVESTMENTS AND ELIGIBILITY TO SECURE PUBLIC FUNDS IN TEXAS

Under the Texas Public Security Procedures Act (Texas Government Code, Chapter 1201, as amended), the Bonds (i) are negotiable instruments, (ii) are investment securities to which Chapter 8 of the Texas Uniform Commercial Code applies, and (iii) are legal and authorized investments for (A) an insurance company, (B) a fiduciary or trustee, or (C) a sinking fund of a municipality or other political subdivision or public agency of the State of Texas. The Bonds are eligible to secure deposits of any public funds of the State, its agencies and political subdivisions, and are legal security for those deposits to the extent of their market value. For political subdivisions in Texas which have adopted investment policies and guidelines in accordance with the Public Funds Investment Act (Texas Government Code, Chapter 2256, as amended), the Bonds may have to be assigned a rating of at least "A" or its equivalent as to investment quality by a national rating agency before such obligations are eligible investments for sinking funds and other public funds. See "OTHER PERTINENT

INFORMATION – Municipal Bond Rating” herein. In addition, various provisions of the Texas Finance Code provide that, subject to a prudent investor standard, the Bonds are legal investments for state banks, savings banks, trust companies with at least \$1 million of capital and savings and loan associations.

The District has made no investigation of other laws, rules, regulations or investment criteria which might apply to such institutions or entities or which might limit the suitability of the Bonds for any of the foregoing purposes or limit the authority of such institutions or entities to purchase or invest in the Bonds for such purposes. The District has made no review of laws in other states to determine whether the Bonds are legal investments for various institutions in those states.

CONTINUING DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION

The District in the Order has made the following agreement for the benefit of the holders and beneficial owners of the Bonds. The District is required to observe the agreement for so long as it remains obligated to advance funds to pay the Bonds. Under the agreement, the District will be obligated to provide certain updated financial information and operating data annually, and timely notice of specified events, to the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board (“MSRB”). This information will be available to the public free of charge from the MSRB via the Electronic Municipal Market Access (“EMMA”) system at www.emma.msrb.org, as further described below under “Availability of Information from MSRB”.

Annual Reports

The District will file certain updated financial information and operating data with the MSRB annually. The information to be updated includes all quantitative financial information and operating data with respect to the District of the general type included in this Official Statement in Tables numbered 1 through 5 and 7 through 11 of APPENDIX A and in APPENDIX C. The District will update and provide this information to the MSRB within 6 months after the end of each fiscal year ending in or after 2018.

The District may provide updated information in full text or may incorporate by reference certain other publicly available documents, as permitted by the United States Securities and Exchange Commission (the “SEC”) Rule 15c2-12 (the “Rule”). The updated information will include audited financial statements, if the District commissions an audit and it is completed by the required time. If audited financial statements are not available within 12 months of or after the end of the Fiscal year, the District will provide unaudited financial statements within such 12-month period and audited financial statements when and if such audited financial statements become available. Any such financial statements will be prepared in accordance with the accounting principles described in Appendix C or such other accounting principles as the District may be required to employ from time to time pursuant to state law or regulation.

The District’s current fiscal year end is August 31. Accordingly, it must provide updated information by the last day of February in each year, unless it changes its fiscal year. If the District changes its fiscal year, it will file notice of such change with the MSRB.

Notice of Certain Events

The District will file with the MSRB notice of any of the following events with respect to the Bonds in a timely manner (not more than 10 business days after occurrence of the event): (1) principal and interest payment delinquencies; (2) non-payment related defaults, if material; (3) unscheduled draws on debt service reserves reflecting financial difficulties; (4) unscheduled draws on credit enhancements reflecting financial difficulties; (5) substitution of credit or liquidity providers, or their failure to perform; (6) adverse tax opinions, the issuance by the Internal Revenue Service of proposed or final determinations of taxability, Notices of Proposed Issue (IRS Form 5701-TEB), or other material notices or determinations with respect to the tax status of the Bonds, or other material events affecting the tax status of the Bonds; (7) modifications to rights of holders of the Bonds, if material; (8) Bond calls, if material, and tender offers; (9) defeasances; (10) release, substitution, or sale of property securing repayment of the Bonds, if material; (11) rating changes; (12) bankruptcy, insolvency, receivership, or similar event of the District, which shall occur as described below; (13) the consummation of a merger, consolidation, or acquisition involving the District or the sale of all or substantially all of its assets, other than in the ordinary course of business, the entry into a definitive agreement to undertake such an action or the termination of a definitive agreement relating to any such actions, other than pursuant to its terms, if material; and (14) appointment of a successor or additional Paying Agent/Registrar or the change of name of a Paying Agent/Registrar, if material. Neither the Bonds nor the Order make any provision for debt service reserves, credit enhancement (with the exception of the Texas Permanent School Fund guarantee), or liquidity enhancement. In addition, the District will provide timely notice of any failure by the District to provide information, data, or financial statements in accordance with its agreement described above under “Annual Reports”. The District will provide each notice described in this paragraph to the MSRB.

For these purposes, any event described in clause (12) in the immediately preceding paragraph is considered to occur when any of the following occur; the appointment of a receiver, fiscal agent, or similar officer for the District in a proceeding under

the United States Bankruptcy Code or in any other proceeding under state or federal law in which a court or governmental authority has assumed jurisdiction over substantially all of the assets or business of the District, or if such jurisdiction has been assumed by leaving the existing governing body and officials or officers in possession but subject to the supervision and orders of a court or governmental authority, or the entry of an order confirming a plan of reorganization, arrangement, or liquidation by a court or governmental authority having supervision or jurisdiction over substantially all of the assets or business of the District.

Availability of Information from MSRB

The District has agreed to provide the foregoing information only to the MSRB. The MSRB intends to make the information available to the public without charge through its EMMA internet portal at www.emma.msrb.org.

Limitations and Amendments

The District has agreed to update information and to provide notices of specified events only as described above. The District has not agreed to provide other information that may be relevant or material to a complete presentation of its financial results of operations, condition, or prospects or agreed to update any information that is provided, except as described above. The District makes no representation or warranty concerning such information or concerning its usefulness to a decision to invest in or sell Bonds at any future date. The District disclaims any contractual or tort liability for damages resulting in whole or in part from any breach of its continuing disclosure agreement or from any statement made pursuant to its agreement, although holders or beneficial owners of Bonds may seek a writ of mandamus to compel the District to comply with its agreement.

The District may amend its continuing disclosure agreement to adapt to changed circumstances that arise from a change in legal requirements, a change in law, or a change in the identity, nature, status, or type of operations of the District, if (1) the agreement, as amended, would have permitted an underwriter to purchase or sell Bonds in the offering described herein in compliance with the Rule, taking into account any amendments or interpretations of the Rule to the date of such amendment, as well as such changed circumstances, and (2) either (a) the holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding Bonds consent or (b) any person unaffiliated with the District (such as nationally recognized bond counsel) determines that the amendment will not materially impair the interests of the beneficial owners of the Bonds. The District may also repeal or amend these provisions if the SEC amends or repeals the applicable provisions of the Rule or any court of final jurisdiction enters judgment that such provisions of the Rule are invalid, but in either case only if and to the extent that the provisions of this sentence would not prevent an underwriter from lawfully purchasing or selling Bonds in the primary offering of the Bonds giving effect to (a) such provisions as so amended and (b) any amendments or interpretations of the Rule. If the District amends its agreement, it must include with the next financial information and operating data provided in accordance with its agreement described above under "Annual Reports" an explanation, in narrative form, of the reasons for the amendment and of the impact of any change in the type of information and data provided.

Compliance with Prior Agreements

Except as described herein, during the past five years, the District has complied in all material respects with its previous continuing disclosure agreements in accordance with the Rule. On November 20, 2014, the District filed an event notice relating to the recalibration of its underlying bond rating by Moody's Investors Service, which resulted in an underlying bond rating upgrade from Baa2 to A2. Concurrently with the filing of such event notice, the District filed a notice of failure to file that event notice in a timely manner.

OTHER PERTINENT INFORMATION

Authenticity of Financial Information

The financial data and other information contained herein have been obtained from the District's records, audited financial statements and other sources, which are believed to be reliable. All of the summaries of the statutes, documents and orders contained in this Official Statement are made subject to all of the provisions of such statutes, documents and orders. These summaries do not purport to be complete statements of such provisions and reference is made to such documents for further information. Reference is made to original documents in all respects.

Registration and Qualification of Bonds for Sale

No registration statement relating to the Bonds has been filed with the SEC under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, in reliance upon the exemption provided thereunder by Section 3(a)(2). The Bonds have not been approved or disapproved by the SEC, nor has the SEC passed upon the accuracy or adequacy of the Official Statement. The Bonds have not been

registered or qualified under the Securities Act of Texas in reliance upon various exemptions contained therein, nor have the Bonds been registered or qualified under the securities act of any other jurisdiction. The District assumes no responsibility for registration or qualification of the Bonds under the securities laws of any jurisdiction in which the Bonds may be sold, assigned, pledged, hypothecated or otherwise transferred. This disclaimer of responsibility for registration or qualification for sale or other disposition of the Bonds shall not be construed as an interpretation of any kind with regard to the availability of any exemption from securities registration or qualification provisions.

It is the obligation of the Underwriter to register or qualify the sale of the Bonds under the securities laws of any jurisdiction which so requires. The District agrees to cooperate, at the Underwriter's written request and sole expense, in registering or qualifying the Bonds or in obtaining an exemption from registration or qualification in any state where such action is necessary; provided, however, that the District shall not be required to qualify as a foreign corporation or to execute a general or special consent to service of process in any jurisdiction.

Municipal Bond Rating

The Bonds have been rated Aaa by Moody's Investors Service ("Moody's") by virtue of the guarantee of the Permanent School Fund of the State of Texas. See "PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM." The Bonds are rated "A2" by Moody's without regard to credit enhancement.

An explanation of the significance of any rating may be obtained from the company furnishing the rating. The rating reflects only the view of such organization and the District makes no representation as to the appropriateness of the rating. There is no assurance that such rating will continue for any given period of time or that it will not be revised downward or withdrawn entirely by such rating company, if in the judgment of such company, circumstances so warrant. Any such downward revision or withdrawal of such rating may have an adverse effect on the market price of the Bonds.

Financial Advisor

Live Oak Public Finance, LLC (the "Financial Advisor") is employed as the Financial Advisor to the District in connection with the issuance of the Bonds. The Financial Advisor's fee for services rendered with respect to the sale of the Bonds is contingent upon the issuance and delivery of the Bonds. Live Oak Public Finance, LLC, in its capacity as Financial Advisor, has relied on the opinion of Bond Counsel and has not verified and does not assume any responsibility for the information, covenants, and representations contained in any of the bond documentation with respect to the federal income tax status of the Bonds. In the normal course of business, the Financial Advisor may also from time to time sell investment securities to the District for the investment of bond proceeds or other funds of the District upon the request of the District.

The Financial Advisor has provided the following sentence for inclusion in this Official Statement. The Financial Advisor has reviewed the information in this Official Statement in accordance with its responsibilities to the District and, as applicable, to investors under the federal securities laws as applied to the facts and circumstances of this transaction, but the Financial Advisor does not guarantee the accuracy or completeness of such information.

Underwriting

The Underwriter has agreed, subject to certain conditions, to purchase the Bonds from the District at the price equal to the initial offering prices to the public, as shown on page -ii- herein, less an Underwriter's discount of \$50,574.50. The Underwriter's obligation is subject to certain conditions precedent. The Underwriter will be obligated to purchase all of the Bonds, if any of the Bonds are purchased. The Bonds may be offered and sold to certain dealers and others at prices lower than such public offering prices, and such public prices may be changed, from time to time, by the Underwriter.

The Underwriter has provided the following sentence for inclusion in this Official Statement. The Underwriter has reviewed the information in this Official Statement in accordance with their responsibilities to investors under the federal securities laws as applied to the facts and circumstances of this transaction, but the Underwriter does not guarantee the accuracy or completeness of such information.

FTN Financial Capital Markets is a division of First Tennessee Bank National Association and FTB Advisors, Inc. is a wholly owned subsidiary of First Tennessee Bank National Association. FTN Financial Capital Markets has entered into a distribution agreement with FTB Advisors, Inc. for the distribution of the Bonds at the original issue prices. Such arrangement generally provides that FTN Financial Capital Markets will share a portion of its underwriting compensation or selling concession with FTB Advisors, Inc.

Forward Looking Statements

The statements contained in this Official Statement, and in any other information provided by the District, that are not purely historical, are forward-looking statements, including statements regarding the District's expectations, hopes, intentions, or strategies regarding the future. Readers should not place undue reliance on forward-looking statements. All forward looking statements included in this Official Statement are based on information available to the District on the date hereof, and the District assumes no obligation to update any such forward-looking statements. It is important to note that the District's actual results could differ materially from those in such forward-looking statements.

The forward-looking statements herein are necessarily based on various assumptions and estimates and are inherently subject to various risks and uncertainties, including risks and uncertainties relating to the possible invalidity of the underlying assumptions and estimates and possible changes or developments in social, economic, business, industry, market, legal and regulatory circumstances and conditions and actions taken or omitted to be taken by third parties, including customers, suppliers, business partners and competitors, and legislative, judicial and other governmental authorities and officials. Assumptions related to the foregoing involve judgments with respect to, among other things, future economic, competitive, and market conditions and future business decisions, all of which are difficult or impossible to predict accurately and many of which are beyond the control of the District. Any of such assumptions could be inaccurate and, therefore, there can be no assurance that the forward-looking statements included in this Official Statement would prove to be accurate.

Information from External Sources

References to web site addresses presented herein are for informational purposes only and may be in the form of a hyperlink solely for the reader's convenience. Unless specified otherwise, such web sites and the information or links contained therein are not incorporated into, and are not part of, this Official Statement for purposes of, and as that term is defined in, the Rule.

Authorization of the Official Statement

No person has been authorized to give any information or to make any representations other than those contained in this Official Statement, and if given or made, such other information or representations must not be relied upon as having been authorized by the District.

This Official Statement has been approved by the Board of the District for distribution in accordance with provisions of the Rule.

The Order approved the form and content of this Official Statement and any addenda, supplement or amendment thereto and authorized its further use in the reoffering of the Bonds by the Underwriter.

SNOOK INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

/s/ Kristine Brisco

President, Board of Trustees

ATTEST:

/s/ Stacey Slovacek

Secretary, Board of Trustees

APPENDIX A
SELECTED FINANCIAL INFORMATION
OF THE DISTRICT

Table 1 - Valuation, Exemptions, and Tax Supported Debt

2018 Tax Year Total Valuation ⁽¹⁾	\$738,858,863
Less: Exemptions and Deductions ⁽¹⁾	\$481,959,147
2018 Tax Year Net Taxable Valuation	\$256,899,716
Unlimited Tax Bonds Outstanding	\$7,655,000
Plus: The Bonds	\$7,350,000
Total Unlimited Tax Bonds	\$15,005,000
Less: Interest & Sinking Fund Balance (as of August 31, 2017) ⁽²⁾	\$492,576
Net General Obligation Debt	\$14,512,424
Ratio of Net G.O. Debt to Net Taxable Valuation ⁽³⁾	5.65%
Estimated District Population ⁽⁴⁾	3,202
Per Capita Net Taxable Valuation	\$80,231
Per Capita Net G.O. Debt	\$4,532

	Tax Year 2018	Tax Year 2017	Tax Year 2016	Tax Year 2015	Tax Year 2014	Tax Year 2013
Gross Value ⁽¹⁾	\$738,858,863	\$681,815,541	\$692,522,306	\$767,388,092	\$473,872,232	\$440,082,566
Less Exemptions ⁽¹⁾	\$481,959,147	\$438,078,399	\$467,748,960	\$479,003,296	\$319,880,464	\$303,034,819
Net Taxable	\$256,899,716	\$243,737,142	\$224,773,346	\$288,384,796	\$153,991,768	\$137,047,747

⁽¹⁾ Source: Burleson County Central Appraisal District.

⁽²⁾ Source: District's Audited Financial Statements.

⁽³⁾ See "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM" in this Official Statement, "Table 7 – Tax Supported Debt Service Requirements" in this APPENDIX A and the Audited Financial Statements in APPENDIX C for more information relative to the District's obligations.

⁽⁴⁾ Population Estimate based on estimate as of fiscal year ending August 31, 2018.

Table 2 - Valuation and Tax Supported Debt History

Fiscal Year Ended 08/31	Estimated Population ⁽¹⁾	Taxable Assessed Valuation ⁽²⁾	Taxable AV Per Capita	Tax Supported Debt Outstanding	Ratio of Tax Supported Debt to Assessed Valuation	Tax Supported Debt Per Capita
2014	3,296	\$137,047,747	\$41,580	\$8,720,000	6.36%	\$2,646
2015	3,196	\$153,991,768	\$48,183	\$8,505,000	5.52%	\$2,661
2016	3,155	\$288,384,796	\$91,406	\$8,180,000	2.84%	\$2,593
2017	3,079	\$224,773,346	\$73,002	\$7,915,000	3.52%	\$5,571
2018	3,202	\$243,737,142	\$76,120	\$7,655,000	3.14%	\$2,391
2019	3,202 ⁽³⁾	\$256,899,716 ⁽⁴⁾	\$80,231	\$15,005,000 ⁽⁵⁾	5.84% ⁽⁵⁾	\$4,686 ^{(3) (5)}

⁽¹⁾ Source: MAC of Texas: Texas Municipal Reports

⁽²⁾ As reported by the Burleson County Central Appraisal District and such values are subject to change during ensuing year.

⁽³⁾ Population Estimate based on estimate as of fiscal year ending August 31, 2018.

⁽⁴⁾ Certified by the Burleson County Central Appraisal District July 24, 2018.

⁽⁵⁾ Including the Bonds.

Table 3 - Tax Rate, Levy, and Collection History

<u>Fiscal Year</u> <u>Ended 08/31</u>	<u>Tax Year</u>	<u>Tax Rate</u>	<u>Local</u>			<u>Percent Collected</u>	
			<u>Maintenance</u>	<u>I&S Fund</u>	<u>Tax Levy</u> ⁽¹⁾	<u>Current</u>	<u>Total</u>
2013	2012	\$1.4000	\$1.0400	\$0.3600	\$1,968,612	94.61%	97.91%
2014	2013	\$1.4000	\$1.0400	\$0.3600	\$1,834,642	95.03%	97.00%
2015	2014	\$1.3700	\$1.0400	\$0.3300	\$2,095,838	96.00%	96.00%
2016	2015	\$1.3700	\$1.0400	\$0.3300	\$3,818,512	98.32%	98.32%
2017	2016	\$1.3700	\$1.1700	\$0.2000	\$3,024,505	96.14%	98.71%
2018 ⁽²⁾	2017	\$1.3700	\$1.1700	\$0.2000	\$3,339,199	95.30%	98.00%
2019	2018	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A

⁽¹⁾ Excludes penalties and interest.

⁽²⁾ Unaudited as of August 9, 2018

Source: District's audited financial statements.

Table 4 - Ten Largest Taxpayers ⁽¹⁾

<u>Taxpayers</u>	<u>Type of Property</u>	<u>Tax Year 2018 Net Taxable</u> <u>Assessed Valuation</u>	<u>% of Total 2018</u> <u>Assessed Valuation</u>
1. Wildhorse Resources Mngt. Co	Oil & Gas	\$29,411,060	11.45%
2. Apache Corporation	Oil & Gas	\$8,729,760	3.40%
3. BNSF Railway Company	Railroad	\$7,773,820	3.03%
4. ETC Texas Pipeline Ltd	Pipeline	\$5,699,270	2.22%
5. Blex Exchange III LP	Commercial	\$3,091,082	1.20%
6. Apache Corp	Oil & Gas	\$2,402,890	0.94%
7. Moody National Iron Horse Ranch LLC	Ranch	\$1,771,743	0.69%
8. 2 Pig Properties LP	Commercial	\$1,575,913	0.61%
9. Gavranovic Riverside Farms LLC	Farm	\$1,489,731	0.58%
10. Workman Robert Reed	Residential	\$1,398,180	0.54%
Total		\$63,343,449	24.66%

Source: Burlleson County Central Appraisal District

⁽¹⁾ As shown in the table above, the top ten taxpayers in the District currently account for in excess of 24% of the District's tax base. Adverse developments in economic conditions, especially in the natural gas industry, could adversely impact the businesses that own natural gas properties in the District and the tax values in the District, resulting in less local tax revenue. If any major taxpayer (or a combination of taxpayers) were to default in the payment of taxes as a result of economic conditions resulting in financial difficulty, the ability of the District to make timely payment of debt service on the Bonds will be dependent on its ability to enforce and liquidate its tax lien (which, in the event of bankruptcy, certain laws preclude until the automatic stay is lifted). Such process is time-consuming and can only occur annually; in the alternative, the District may sell tax anticipation notes until such amounts could be collected, if ever. See "THE BONDS – Default and Remedies" and "AD VALOREM TAX PROCEDURES – The Texas Tax Code as Applied to the District" in this Official Statement.

Table 5 – Tax Adequacy

2019 Net Principal and Interest Requirements	\$837,789
\$0.3328 Tax Rate at 98% Collection Produces	\$837,789
Average Net Annual Principal and Interest Requirements, 2019-2048	\$763,935
\$0.3034 Tax Rate at 98% Collection Produces	\$763,935
Maximum Net Principal and Interest Requirements, 2038	\$963,675
\$0.3828 Tax Rate at 98% Collection Produces	\$963,675

[Remainder of this page intentionally left blank.]

Table 6 - Estimated Overlapping Debt

Expenditures of the various taxing entities within the territory of the District are paid out of ad valorem taxes levied by such entities on properties within the District. Such entities are independent of the District and may incur borrowings to finance their expenditures. This statement of direct and estimated overlapping ad valorem tax bonds (“Tax Debt”) was developed from information contained in “Texas Municipal Reports” published by the Municipal Advisory Council of Texas. Except for the amounts relating to the District, the District has not independently verified the accuracy or completeness of such information, and no person should rely upon such information as being accurate or complete. Furthermore, certain of the entities listed may have issued additional bonds since the date hereof, and such entities may have programs requiring the issuance of substantial amounts of additional bonds, the amount of which cannot be determined. The following table reflects the estimated share of overlapping Tax Debt of the District.

<u>Taxing Jurisdiction</u>	<u>As Of</u>	<u>Total Debt</u>	<u>Estimated % Overlapping</u>	<u>Overlapping Debt</u>
Burleson County	7/31/2018	\$3,985,000	16.13%	\$642,781
Burleson County Hospital District	7/31/2018	708,000	16.13%	114,200
Snook, City of	7/31/2018	-	100.00%	-
Estimated (Net) Overlapping Debt				<u>\$756,981</u>
The District ⁽¹⁾	9/01/2018	\$15,005,000	100.00%	<u>\$15,005,000</u>
Total Direct & Estimated Overlapping Debt				<u>\$15,761,981</u>
As a % of 2017 Certified Taxable Assessed Valuation				2.13%
Total Direct & Estimated Overlapping Debt Per Capita				\$4,923

Source: MAC of Texas; Texas Municipal Reports

⁽¹⁾ Includes the Bonds.

[Remainder of this page intentionally left blank.]

Table 7 - Tax Supported Debt Service Requirements

Fiscal Year Ending 08/31	Outstanding Debt Service	Plus: The Bonds			New Total Debt Service Requirements
		Principal	Interest	Total	
2019	\$514,450.00	65,000.00	258,339.17	323,339.17	\$837,789.17
2020	\$508,550.00	110,000.00	276,750.00	386,750.00	\$895,300.00
2021	\$512,250.00	155,000.00	274,100.00	429,100.00	\$941,350.00
2022	\$510,450.00	155,000.00	270,225.00	425,225.00	\$935,675.00
2023	\$503,350.00	160,000.00	265,500.00	425,500.00	\$928,850.00
2024	\$510,750.00	165,000.00	260,625.00	425,625.00	\$936,375.00
2025	\$512,450.00	170,000.00	255,600.00	425,600.00	\$938,050.00
2026	\$506,337.50	175,000.00	250,425.00	425,425.00	\$931,762.50
2027	\$507,587.50	180,000.00	244,200.00	424,200.00	\$931,787.50
2028	\$508,587.50	190,000.00	236,800.00	426,800.00	\$935,387.50
2029	\$513,800.00	195,000.00	229,100.00	424,100.00	\$937,900.00
2030	\$513,212.50	205,000.00	221,100.00	426,100.00	\$939,312.50
2031	\$516,775.00	210,000.00	212,800.00	422,800.00	\$939,575.00
2032	\$519,400.00	220,000.00	204,200.00	424,200.00	\$943,600.00
2033	\$526,500.00	230,000.00	195,200.00	425,200.00	\$951,700.00
2034	\$528,075.00	240,000.00	185,800.00	425,800.00	\$953,875.00
2035	\$529,200.00	250,000.00	176,000.00	426,000.00	\$955,200.00
2036	\$534,187.50	255,000.00	165,900.00	420,900.00	\$955,087.50
2037	\$532,387.50	270,000.00	155,400.00	425,400.00	\$957,787.50
2038	\$539,275.00	280,000.00	144,400.00	424,400.00	\$963,675.00
2039	\$-	290,000.00	133,000.00	423,000.00	\$423,000.00
2040	\$-	300,000.00	121,200.00	421,200.00	\$421,200.00
2041	\$-	315,000.00	108,900.00	423,900.00	\$423,900.00
2042	\$-	325,000.00	96,100.00	421,100.00	\$421,100.00
2043	\$-	340,000.00	82,800.00	422,800.00	\$422,800.00
2044	\$-	350,000.00	69,000.00	419,000.00	\$419,000.00
2045	\$-	365,000.00	54,700.00	419,700.00	\$419,700.00
2046	\$-	380,000.00	39,800.00	419,800.00	\$419,800.00
2047	\$-	395,000.00	24,300.00	419,300.00	\$419,300.00
2048	\$-	410,000.00	8,200.00	418,200.00	\$418,200.00
TOTAL	\$10,347,575.00	\$7,350,000.00	\$5,220,464.17	\$12,570,464.17	\$22,918,039.17

Average Annual Debt Service Requirement \$763,935
 Maximum Debt Service Requirement (2038) \$963,675

Table 8 - Interest and Sinking Fund Budget Projection

Interest and Sinking Fund Balance, 09-01-17 (Beginning) ⁽¹⁾	\$460,075
Tax Supported Debt Service Requirements for Fiscal Year Ended 2019	\$837,789
Projected Interest and Sinking Fund Local Revenue	\$1,477,718
Debt Subsidy from Texas Education Agency	\$ 0
Transfers In/(Out)	\$ 0
Net Increase/(Decrease) in Fund Balance	\$639,929
Interest and Sinking Fund Balance, 08-31-18 (Ending)	\$1,100,004

⁽¹⁾ Unaudited, projected as of August 6, 2018.

Table 9 - Other Obligations

As of August 31, 2017, other obligations of the District included the following capital leases ⁽¹⁾:

<u>Year Ending August 31.</u>	<u>Principal</u>	<u>SECO Loan</u> <u>Interest</u>	<u>Total</u>
2018	\$29,845	\$498	\$30,343
2019	\$29,920	\$424	\$30,344
2020	\$29,995	\$349	\$30,344
2021	\$30,070	\$274	\$30,344
2022	\$30,145	\$198	\$30,343
2023-2037	\$60,517	\$170	\$60,687
TOTALS	\$210,492	\$1,913	\$212,405

⁽¹⁾ Source: The District's audited financial statements.

[Remainder of this page intentionally left blank.]

Table 10 – Schedule of General Fund Revenues and Expenditure History

	<u>2017</u>	<u>2016</u>	<u>2015</u> ⁽¹⁾	<u>2014</u>	<u>2013</u>
REVENUES:					
Total Local, and Intermediate Sources	\$2,667,781	\$3,102,292	\$1,730,858	\$1,468,275	\$1,562,430
State Program Revenues	\$2,412,106	\$3,610,098	\$3,319,153	\$3,226,671	\$3,058,277
Federal Program Revenues	\$17,914	\$-	\$-	\$-	\$1,165
Total Revenues	\$5,097,801	\$6,712,390	\$5,050,011	\$4,694,946	\$4,621,872
EXPENDITURES:					
Instruction	\$2,459,754	\$2,766,527	\$2,484,424	\$2,323,885	\$2,383,664
Instructional Resources & Media Services	\$10,224	\$16,963	\$21,407	\$51,985	\$79,489
Curriculum & Instructional Staff Development	\$115,651	\$135,786	\$104,649	\$76,831	\$85,783
Instructional Leadership	\$10,795	\$51,600	\$29,151	\$35,653	\$2,417
School Leadership	\$416,758	\$373,732	\$332,211	\$331,809	\$338,510
Guidance, Counseling & Evaluation Services	\$141,203	\$141,020	\$138,177	\$146,307	\$150,099
Health Services	\$57,933	\$61,511	\$57,759	\$53,454	\$37,987
Student Transportation	\$197,232	\$284,265	\$304,176	\$193,265	\$295,189
Food Services	\$-	\$-	\$-	\$-	\$-
Extra/Co-curricular Activities	\$424,843	\$434,708	\$392,635	\$367,644	\$324,592
General Administration	\$433,043	\$496,045	\$424,396	\$381,217	\$345,855
Facilities Maintenance and Operations	\$623,219	\$800,692	\$707,415	\$570,893	\$607,334
Security Monitoring and Services	\$14,523	\$21,162	\$11,234	\$12,648	\$8,150
Data Processing Services	\$161,205	\$151,355	\$101,160	\$90,633	\$99,124
Debt Services:					
Principal on Long Term Debt	\$29,771	\$45,541	\$46,069	\$45,701	\$46,577
Interest on Long Term Debt	\$573	\$1,721	\$1,193	\$1,810	\$934
Debt Issuance Costs and Fees	\$-	\$-	\$-	\$-	\$-
Capital Outlay	\$4,813	\$-	\$-	\$-	\$-
Intergovernmental:					
Payments to Shared Services Arrangements	\$43,137	\$53,527	\$54,776	\$51,823	\$42,151
Other Intergovernmental Charges	\$110,358	\$98,576	\$64,492	\$55,110	\$56,323
Total Expenses	\$5,255,035	\$5,934,731	\$5,275,324	\$4,790,668	\$4,904,178
Excess (Deficiency) of Revenues Over (Under) Exp.	\$(157,234)	\$777,659	\$(225,313)	\$(95,722)	\$(282,306)
Other Financing Sources and (Uses):					
Sale of Real and Personal Property	\$-	\$3,797	\$220	\$-	\$-
Capital Leases	\$-	\$-	\$91,610	\$-	\$92,278
Non-Current Loans	\$-	\$-	\$-	\$-	\$-
Transfers In	\$-	\$-	\$-	\$-	\$-
Transfers Out (Use)	\$(48,159)	\$(144,413)	\$(73,028)	\$(38,970)	\$(53,062)
Other Uses	\$-	\$-	\$-	\$-	\$57,160
Total Other Financing Sources and (Uses)	\$(48,159)	\$(140,616)	\$18,802	\$(38,970)	\$96,376
Special Item (Resource)	\$6,958	\$-	\$-	\$-	\$-
Net Change in Fund Balances	\$(198,435)	\$637,043	\$(206,511)	\$(134,692)	\$(185,930)
Fund Balance - (Beginning)	\$1,447,668	\$810,626	\$1,017,136	\$1,151,828	\$1,337,757
Fund Balance - (Ending)	\$1,249,233	\$1,447,669	\$810,625	\$1,017,136	\$1,151,827

Source: The District's audited financial statements.

⁽¹⁾ District implementation of GASB Statement No. 68 for the fiscal year ending August 31, 2015.

Table 11 - General Operating Fund Comparative Balance Sheet

	<u>2017</u>	<u>2016</u>	<u>2015</u> ⁽¹⁾	<u>2014</u>	<u>2013</u>
ASSETS:					
Cash & Cash Equivalents	\$1,319,509	\$1,715,597	\$994,684	\$1,228,181	\$1,118,420
Current Investments	\$-	\$-	\$-	\$-	\$-
Property Taxes Receivable	\$374,089	\$324,343	\$301,107	\$320,496	\$339,955
Allowance for Uncollectible Taxes	\$(111,721)	\$(96,323)	\$(128,352)	\$(141,265)	\$(132,650)
Due from Other Governments	\$210,131	\$62,524	\$11,000	\$15,000	\$172,436
Due from Other Funds	\$40,114	\$3,632	\$17,356	\$12,600	\$16,411
Other Receivables	\$2,925	\$1,572	\$9,401	\$2,070	\$32,803
Prepaid Items	\$5,766	\$3,983	\$23,010	\$16,902	\$4,961
Total Assets	\$1,840,813	\$2,015,328	\$1,228,206	\$1,453,984	\$1,552,336
LIABILITIES:					
Accounts Payable	\$123,162	\$115,150	\$69,893	\$77,355	\$33,176
Payroll Deductions & Withholdings Payable	\$60,073	\$38,683	\$39,945	\$52,905	\$29,598
Accrued Wages Payable	\$136,421	\$155,624	\$124,880	\$121,548	\$125,461
Due to Other Funds	\$-	\$-	\$-	\$-	\$-
Due to Other Governments	\$-	\$-	\$5,577	\$1,524	\$-
Accrued Expenditures	\$3,021	\$25,974	\$2,297	\$2,216	\$521
Unearned Revenues	\$6,535	\$4,208	\$2,234	\$2,070	\$4,447
Total Expenses	\$329,212	\$339,639	\$244,826	\$257,618	\$193,203
DEFERRED INFLOWS OF RESOURCES:					
Unavailable Revenue - Property Taxes	\$262,368	\$228,020	\$172,755	\$179,230	\$207,306
Total Deferred Inflows of Resources	\$262,368	\$228,020	\$172,755	\$179,230	\$207,306
FUND BALANCES:					
Nonspendable					
Prepaid Items	\$5,766	\$3,983	\$23,010	\$16,902	\$4,961
Restricted Fund Balance:					
Federal or State Funds Grant Restrictions	\$-	\$-	\$-	\$-	\$-
Capital Acquisition and Contractual Oblig.	\$-	\$-	\$-	\$-	\$-
Retirement of Long Term Debt	\$-	\$-	\$-	\$-	\$-
Other Restrictions of Fund Balance	\$-	\$-	\$-	\$-	\$-
Assigned Fund Balance:					
Construction	\$-	\$-	\$600,000	\$600,000	\$600,000
Unassigned Fund Balance:	\$1,243,467	\$1,443,686	\$187,615	\$400,234	\$546,866
Total Fund Balances	\$1,249,233	\$1,447,669	\$810,625	\$1,017,136	\$1,151,827
Total Liabilities, Deferred Inflow of Resources, and Fund Balances	\$1,840,813	\$2,015,328	\$1,228,206	\$1,453,984	\$1,552,336

Source: District's audited financial reports

⁽¹⁾ District implementation of GASB Statement No. 68 for the fiscal year ending August 31, 2015.

APPENDIX B

**General Information Regarding the District
and its Economy**

THE DISTRICT

General and Economic Information

Enrollment Statistics ⁽¹⁾

<u>Year Ending 8/31</u>	<u>Enrollment</u>
2007	489
2008	468
2009	507
2010	504
2011	522
2012	537
2013	517
2014	515
2015	503
2016	508
2017	486
Current	504 *

District Staff ⁽¹⁾

Teachers	45
Auxiliary Personnel	19
Teachers' Aides & Secretaries	14
Administrators	8
Other (Counselors, RNs, Librarians)	4

Facilities ⁽¹⁾

<u>Campus</u>	<u>Grades</u>	<u>Current Enrollment</u>	<u>Capacity</u>	<u>Year Built</u>	<u>Year of Addition/Renovation</u>
Elementary	PK-5	255	290	2009	N/A
Secondary	6-12	249	290	1968	1983, 2000, 2010

Unemployment Rates ⁽²⁾

	<u>January 2016</u>	<u>January 2017</u>	<u>January 2018</u>
Burleson County	4.4%	4.8%	3.9%
State of Texas	4.5%	4.9%	4.0%

⁽¹⁾ Source: Snook ISD District records.

⁽²⁾ Source: United States Department of Labor.

* As of June 7, 2018.

APPENDIX C

Audited Financial Statements

The information contained in this appendix consists of the Snook Independent School District Audited Financial Statements (the "Report") for the fiscal year ended August 31, 2017.

The information presented represents only a part of the Report and does not purport to be a complete statement of the District's financial condition. Reference is made to the complete Annual Audit Report for additional information.

SNOOK
INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

ANNUAL FINANCIAL REPORT

FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

This page is left blank intentionally.

Snook Independent School District
Annual Financial Report
For The Year Ended August 31, 2017

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	<u>Page</u>	<u>Exhibit</u>
INTRODUCTORY SECTION		
Certificate of Board.....	2	
FINANCIAL SECTION		
Independent Auditors' Report.....	4	
Management's Discussion and Analysis (Required Supplementary Information).....	8	
<u>Basic Financial Statements</u>		
Government-wide Financial Statements:		
Statement of Net Position.....	15	A-1
Statement of Activities.....	16	B-1
Fund Financial Statements:		
Balance Sheet - Governmental Funds.....	17	C-1
Reconciliation of the Governmental Funds		
Balance Sheet to the Statement of Net Position.....	18	C-1 R
Statement of Revenues, Expenditures, and Changes in		
Fund Balances - Governmental Funds.....	19	C-2
Reconciliation of the Statement of Revenues, Expenditures, and Changes in		
Fund Balances of Governmental Funds to the Statement of Activities.....	20	C-3
Statement of Net Position - Internal Service Fund.....	21	D-1
Statement of Revenues, Expenses, and Changes in		
Fund Net Position - Internal Service Fund.....	22	D-2
Statement of Cash Flows - Internal Service Fund.....	23	D-3
Statement of Fiduciary Net Position - Fiduciary Funds.....	24	E-1
Notes to the Financial Statements	25	
<u>Required Supplementary Information</u>		
Budgetary Comparison Schedules:		
General Fund.....	47	G-1
Schedule of the District's Proportionate Share of the		
Net Pension Liability - Teacher Retirement System of Texas (TRS).....	49	G-2
Schedule of District Contributions - Teacher Retirement System of Texas (TRS).....	50	G-3
<u>Combining Statements as Supplementary Information:</u>		
Combining Balance Sheet - All Nonmajor Governmental Funds.....	53	H-1
Combining Statement of Revenues, Expenditures, and Changes in		
Fund Balances - All Nonmajor Governmental Funds.....	54	H-2

Snook Independent School District
Annual Financial Report
For The Year Ended August 31, 2017

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	<u>Page</u>	<u>Exhibit</u>
Special Revenue Funds:		
Combining Balance Sheet - Nonmajor Special Revenue Funds.....	55	H-3
Combining Statement of Revenues, Expenditures, and Changes in Fund Balances - Nonmajor Special Revenue Funds.....	58	H-4
OTHER SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION SECTION		
Schedule of Delinquent Taxes Receivable.....	62	J-1
Budgetary Comparison Schedules Required by the Texas Education Agency:		
National School Breakfast and Lunch Program.....	64	J-2
Debt Service Fund.....	65	J-3
Independent Auditors' Report on Internal Control over Financial Reporting and on Compliance and Other Matters Based on an Audit of Financial Statements Performed in Accordance with <i>Government Auditing Standards</i>	66	
Schedule of Findings and Questioned Costs	68	
Summary Schedule of Prior Audit Findings.....	69	
Schedule of Required Responses to Selected School First Indicators.....	70	L-1

Introductory Section

This page is left blank intentionally.

CERTIFICATE OF BOARD

Snook Independent School District
Name of School District

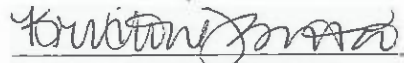
Burleson
County

026-903
Co.-Dist. Number

We, the undersigned, certify that the attached annual financial reports of the above named school district were reviewed and (check one) approved disapproved for the year ended August 31, 2017, at a meeting of the board of trustees of such school district on the 18th day of December, 2017.



Signature of Board Secretary



Signature of Board President

If the board of trustees disapproved of the auditors' report, the reason(s) for disapproving it is (are):
(attach list as necessary)

This page is left blank intentionally.

Financial Section

This page is left blank intentionally.



Independent Auditors' Report

To the Board of Trustees of
Snook Independent School District:

Report on the Financial Statements

We have audited the accompanying financial statements of the governmental activities, each major fund, and the aggregate remaining fund information of Snook Independent School District (the "District") as of and for the year ended August 31, 2017, and the related notes to the financial statements, which collectively comprise the District's basic financial statements as listed in the table of contents.

Management's Responsibility for the Financial Statements

Management is responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of these financial statements in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America; this includes the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

Auditors' Responsibility

Our responsibility is to express opinions on these financial statements based on our audit. We conducted our audit in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America and the standards applicable to financial audits contained in *Government Auditing Standards*, issued by the Comptroller General of the United States. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free from material misstatement.

An audit involves performing procedures to obtain audit evidence about the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. The procedures selected depend on the auditors' judgment, including the assessment of the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to fraud or error. In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the District's preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the District's internal control. Accordingly, we express no such opinion. An audit also includes evaluating the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of significant accounting estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the financial statements.

We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our audit opinions.

Opinions

In our opinion, the financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the respective financial position of the governmental activities, each major fund, and the aggregate remaining fund information of the District as of August 31, 2017, and the respective changes in financial position and, where applicable, cash flows thereof for the year then ended, in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

Other Matters

Required Supplementary Information

Accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America require that the Management's Discussion and Analysis, budgetary comparison information, schedule of the District's proportionate share of the net pension liability, and schedule of District contributions, identified as Required Supplementary Information in the table of contents, be presented to supplement the basic financial statements. Such information, although not a part of the basic financial statements, is required by the Governmental Accounting Standards Board, who considers it to be an essential part of financial reporting for placing the basic financial statements in an appropriate operational, economic, or historical context. We have applied certain limited procedures to the Required Supplementary Information in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America, which consisted of inquiries of management about the methods of preparing the information and comparing the information for consistency with management's responses to our inquiries, the basic financial statements, and other knowledge we obtained during our audit of the basic financial statements. We do not express an opinion or provide any assurance on the information because the limited procedures do not provide us with sufficient evidence to express an opinion or provide any assurance.

Other Information

Our audit was conducted for the purpose of forming opinions on the financial statements that collectively comprise the District's basic financial statements. The introductory section, combining and individual nonmajor fund financial statements, other supplementary information, and the schedule of required responses to selected school first indicators are presented for purposes of additional analysis and are not required parts of the basic financial statements.

The combining and individual nonmajor fund financial statements and other supplementary information are the responsibility of management and were derived from and relate directly to the underlying accounting and other records used to prepare the basic financial statements. Such information has been subjected to the auditing procedures applied in the audit of the basic financial statements and certain additional procedures, including comparing and reconciling such information directly to the underlying accounting and other records used to prepare the basic financial statements or to the basic financial statements themselves, and other additional procedures in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. In our opinion, the combining and individual nonmajor fund financial statements and other supplementary information are fairly stated in all material respects in relation to the basic financial statements as a whole.

The introductory section and the schedule of required responses to selected school first indicators have not been subjected to the auditing procedures applied in the audit of the basic financial statements and, accordingly, we do not express an opinion or provide assurance on them.

Other Reporting Required by *Government Auditing Standards*

In accordance with *Government Auditing Standards*, we have also issued our report dated December 11, 2017 on our consideration of the District's internal control over financial reporting and on our tests of its compliance with certain provisions of laws, regulations, contracts, and grant agreements and other matters. The purpose of that report is to describe the scope of our testing of internal control over financial reporting and compliance and the results of that testing, and not to provide an opinion on internal control over financial reporting or on compliance. That report is an integral part of an audit performed in accordance with *Government Auditing Standards* in considering the District's internal control over financial reporting and compliance.

Respectfully submitted,

 BELT HARRIS PECHACEK, LLP

Belt Harris Pechacek, LLLP
Certified Public Accountants
Houston, Texas
December 11, 2017

This page is left blank intentionally.

Management's Discussion and Analysis

This page is left blank intentionally.

SNOOK INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

MANAGEMENT'S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS

For the Year Ended August 31, 2017

This discussion and analysis of the Snook Independent School District's (the "District") financial performance provides an overview of the District's financial activities for the year ended August 31, 2017. It should be read in conjunction with the District's financial statements.

FINANCIAL HIGHLIGHTS

- The District's total combined net position at August 31, 2017 was \$4,787,918.
- For the fiscal year ended August 31, 2017, the District's general fund reported a total fund balance of \$1,249,233, of which \$5,766 is nonspendable and \$1,243,467 is unassigned. The debt service fund reported a total fund balance of \$492,576.
- At the end of the fiscal year, the District's governmental funds (the general fund plus all state and federal grant funds, the debt service fund, and the capital projects fund) reported combined ending fund balances of \$1,941,569.

OVERVIEW OF THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

The annual report consists of three parts – *Management's Discussion and Analysis* (this section), the *Basic Financial Statements*, and *Required Supplementary Information*. The basic statements include two kinds of statements that present different views of the District.

- The first two statements are *government-wide financial statements* that provide both *long-term* and *short-term* information about the District's overall financial status.
- The remaining statements are *fund financial statements* that focus on *individual parts* of the government, reporting the District's operations in more detail than the government-wide statements.
- The *governmental funds* statements tell how *general government* services were financed in the *short-term* as well as what remains for future spending.
- *Proprietary fund* statements provide information about services provided to parties inside the District.
- *Fiduciary fund* statements provide information about the financial relationships in which the District acts solely as a trustee or agent for the benefit of others, to whom the fiduciary resources belong. This fund includes student activity funds.

The financial statements also include notes that explain some of the information in the financial statements and provide more detailed data. The notes to the financial statements are followed by a section entitled *Required Supplementary Information* that further explains and supports the information in the financial statements.

GOVERNMENT-WIDE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

The government-wide statements report information about the District as a whole using accounting methods similar to those used by private-sector companies. The Statement of Net Position includes all of the District's assets and liabilities. All of the current year's revenues and expenses are accounted for in the Statement of Activities regardless of when cash is received or paid.

SNOOK INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

MANAGEMENT'S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS (Continued)

For the Year Ended August 31, 2017

The government-wide statements report information about the District's net position and how it has changed. Net position is the difference between the District's assets and liabilities and is one way to measure the District's financial health or position.

- Over time, increases or decreases in the District's net position is an indicator of whether the financial position is improving or deteriorating, respectively.
- To assess the overall health of the District, one needs to consider additional non-financial factors, such as changes in the District's tax base, staffing patterns, enrollment, and attendance.

The governmental-wide financial statements of the District include the *governmental activities*. The District's basic services such as instruction, extracurricular activities, curriculum and staff development, health services, general administration, and plant operation and maintenance are included in *governmental activities*. Locally assessed property taxes, together with State foundation program entitlements, which are based upon student enrollment and attendance, finance most of the governmental activities.

FUND FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

The fund financial statements provide more detailed information about the District's most significant funds – not the District as a whole. Funds are simply accounting devices that are used to keep track of specific sources of funding and spending for particular purposes.

- Some funds are required by State law and other funds are mandated by bond agreements or bond covenants.
- The Board of Trustees establishes other funds to control and manage money set aside for particular purposes or to show that the District is properly using certain taxes and grants.
- Other funds are used to account for assets held by the District in a custodial capacity. These assets do not belong to the District, but the District is responsible to properly account for them.

The District has the following kinds of funds:

- *Governmental funds* – Most of the District's basic services are included in governmental funds, which focus on (1) how *cash and other financial assets* that can readily be converted to cash flow in and out and (2) the balances left at year end that are available for spending. Consequently, the governmental fund statements provide a detailed *short-term* view that helps you determine whether there are more or fewer financial resources that can be spent in the near future to finance the District's programs. Because this information does not encompass the additional long-term focus of the government-wide statements, we provide additional information at the bottom of the governmental funds statement, or on the subsequent page, that explain the relationship (or differences) between them.
- *Proprietary funds* – This fund includes the internal service fund. The District's workers' compensation and unemployment fund activity is reported in the internal service fund and is shown in a separate statement of net position and as a statement of changes in net position.

SNOOK INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

MANAGEMENT'S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS (Continued)

For the Year Ended August 31, 2017

- *Fiduciary funds* – The District serves as the trustee, or fiduciary, for certain funds such as student activity funds. The District is responsible for ensuring that the assets reported in these funds are used for their intended purposes. All of the District's fiduciary activities are reported in a separate statement of fiduciary net position. We exclude these activities from the District's government-wide financial statements because the District cannot use these assets to finance its governmental operations.

FINANCIAL ANALYSIS OF THE DISTRICT AS A WHOLE

The District's combined net position was \$4,787,918 at August 31, 2017. *Table 1* focuses on net position while *Table 2* shows the revenues and expenses that changed the net position balance during the fiscal year ended August 31, 2017. The District reported a decrease of \$473,163 in net position from the prior year. This change can be attributed to decreases in property taxes and state foundation revenue.

Table 1
Net Position

<u>Description</u>	<u>Governmental Activities</u>		<u>Total Change</u>
	<u>2017</u>	<u>2016</u>	<u>2017-2016</u>
Current assets	\$ 2,678,711	\$ 2,917,172	\$ (238,461)
Capital assets	11,235,207	11,713,471	(478,264)
Total Assets	13,913,918	14,630,643	(716,725)
Deferred charge on refunding	250,614	261,057	(10,443)
Deferred outflows - pensions	469,254	606,390	(137,136)
Total Deferred Outflows of Resources	719,868	867,447	(147,579)
Current liabilities	386,754	440,954	(54,200)
Long-term liabilities	9,401,128	9,630,508	(229,380)
Total Liabilities	9,787,882	10,071,462	(283,580)
Deferred inflows - pensions	57,986	165,547	(107,561)
Total Deferred Inflows of Resources	57,986	165,547	(107,561)
Net Position:			
Net investment in capital assets	2,839,885	3,029,327	(189,442)
Restricted	666,797	720,756	(53,959)
Unrestricted	1,281,236	1,510,998	(229,762)
Total Net Position	\$ 4,787,918	\$ 5,261,081	\$ (473,163)

SNOOK INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
MANAGEMENT'S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS (Continued)
For the Year Ended August 31, 2017

Table 2
Changes in Net Position

	Governmental Activities		Total Change
	2017	2016	2017-2016
Revenues			
Program revenues:			
Charges for services	\$ 112,066	\$ 120,614	\$ (8,548)
Operating grants and contributions	1,078,525	1,173,014	(94,489)
General revenues:			
Property taxes	3,062,073	3,953,094	(891,021)
Grants and contributions not restricted	2,159,304	3,356,442	(1,197,138)
Investment earnings	5,560	4,020	1,540
Miscellaneous	42,749	127,228	(84,479)
Total Revenue	<u>6,460,277</u>	<u>8,734,412</u>	<u>(2,274,135)</u>
Expenses			
Instruction	3,137,926	3,462,976	(325,050)
Instructional resources and media services	45,448	53,847	(8,399)
Curriculum and staff development	188,661	146,539	42,122
Instructional leadership	13,829	55,224	(41,395)
School leadership	442,463	401,476	40,987
Guidance, counseling, and evaluation services	150,043	151,544	(1,501)
Health services	61,210	65,403	(4,193)
Student transportation	257,986	244,645	13,341
Food services	451,070	549,200	(98,130)
Co-curricular/extracurricular activities	454,674	456,877	(2,203)
General administration	468,834	529,695	(60,861)
Plant maintenance and operations	667,660	765,853	(98,193)
Security and monitoring	14,523	21,162	(6,639)
Data processing services	164,816	163,667	1,149
Community services	5,718	-	5,718
Interest on long-term debt	254,634	212,022	42,612
Bond issuance costs and fees	450	183,172	(182,722)
Payments related to shared services arrangements	43,137	53,527	(10,390)
Other intergovernmental charges	110,358	98,576	11,782
Total Expenses	<u>6,933,440</u>	<u>7,615,405</u>	<u>(681,965)</u>
Change in Net Position	<u>(473,163)</u>	<u>1,119,007</u>	<u>(1,592,170)</u>
Beginning net position	5,261,081	4,142,074	1,119,007
Ending Net Position	<u>\$ 4,787,918</u>	<u>\$ 5,261,081</u>	<u>\$ (473,163)</u>

FINANCIAL ANALYSIS OF THE DISTRICT'S FUNDS

At the close of the fiscal year ending August 31, 2017, the District's governmental funds reported a combined fund balance of \$1,941,569. This compares to a combined fund balance of \$2,193,964 at August 31, 2016. The fund balance in the general fund decreased \$198,435 primarily due to a decrease in property taxes and state foundation revenue. The debt service fund decreased \$64,512 due to a decrease in property tax revenues.

SNOOK INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

MANAGEMENT'S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS (Continued)

For the Year Ended August 31, 2017

BUDGETARY HIGHLIGHTS

In accordance with State law and generally accepted accounting principles, the District prepares an annual budget for the general fund, the food service special revenue fund, and the debt service fund. Special revenue funds have budgets approved by the funding agency and are amended throughout the year as required.

During the period ended August 31, 2017, the District amended its budget as required by State law and to reflect current levels of revenue and anticipated expenses. There were no material changes between the original budget and the final amended budget. The general fund's actual revenues exceeded the budgeted revenues by \$214,490 and the budgeted expenditures exceeded actual expenditures by \$164,722.

CAPITAL ASSETS

Capital assets are generally defined as those items that have useful lives of two years or more and have an initial cost of an amount determined by the Board. Donated capital assets are recorded at an acquisition value at the date of donation. During the fiscal year ended August 31, 2017, the District used a capitalization threshold of \$5,000, which means that all capital type assets, including library books, with a cost or initial value of less than \$5,000 were not included in the capital assets inventory.

At August 31, 2017, the District had a total of \$11,235,206 invested in capital assets (net of accumulated depreciation) such as land, buildings, and District equipment. This total includes \$7,024 invested during the fiscal year ended August 31, 2017.

Major capital asset events during the year included the following:

- Purchase of network servers for \$7,024

More detailed information about the District's capital assets can be found in the notes to the financial statements.

LONG-TERM DEBT

At year end, the District had \$7,925,149 in general obligation bonds and a loan outstanding versus \$8,219,920 last year. The net decrease of \$294,771 is due to the principal payments paid during the year.

More detailed information about the District's long-term liabilities is presented in the notes to the financial statements.

ECONOMIC FACTORS AND NEXT YEAR'S BUDGET AND RATES

The following factors were considered in establishing the District's budget for 2017-2018:

- The District budgeted revenues of \$5,767,726 and expenditures of \$5,767,726.
- The District's Board of Trustees adopted a Maintenance and Operation tax rate of \$1.17 and an Interest and Sinking tax rate of \$0.20 for a total of \$1.37 per \$100 of property valuation.

SNOOK INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

MANAGEMENT'S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS (Continued)

For the Year Ended August 31, 2017

CONTACTING THE DISTRICT'S FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT

This financial report is designed to provide our citizens, taxpayers, and creditors with a general overview of the District's finances and to show the District's accountability for the money it receives. If you have questions about this report or need additional financial information, contact the District's business office at 10110 FM 2155, Snook, TX 77878 or by calling at (979) 272-8307.

Basic Financial Statements

SNOOK INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

STATEMENT OF NET POSITION

AUGUST 31, 2017

Data Control Codes	1	Governmental Activities
ASSETS:		
1110	Cash and Cash Equivalents	\$ 1,947,550
1120	Current Investments	128,074
1220	Property Taxes Receivable	469,508
1230	Allowance for Uncollectible Taxes	(139,047)
1240	Due from Other Governments	263,937
1290	Other Receivables (Net)	2,925
1410	Prepaid Items	5,766
Capital Assets:		
1510	Land	320,322
1520	Buildings and Improvements, Net	10,548,751
1530	Furniture and Equipment, Net	93,921
1530	Vehicles, Net	272,213
1000	Total Assets	<u>13,913,918</u>
DEFERRED OUTFLOWS OF RESOURCES:		
1700	Deferred Charges on Refunding	250,614
1705	Deferred Outflows Related to Pensions	469,254
1700	Total Deferred Outflows of Resources	<u>719,868</u>
LIABILITIES:		
2110	Accounts Payable	138,015
2140	Interest Payable	11,338
2165	Accrued Liabilities	228,424
2180	Due to Other Governments	892
2300	Deferred Revenue	8,085
Noncurrent Liabilities:		
2501	Due Within One Year	289,845
2502	Due in More Than One Year	8,105,477
2540	Net Pension Liability	1,005,806
2000	Total Liabilities	<u>9,787,882</u>
DEFERRED INFLOWS OF RESOURCES:		
2605	Deferred Inflows Related to Pensions	57,986
2600	Total Deferred Inflows of Resources	<u>57,986</u>
NET POSITION:		
3200	Net Investment in Capital Assets	2,839,885
Restricted For:		
3820	Federal and State Programs	41,214
3850	Debt Service	492,576
3860	Capital Projects	44
3890	Other Purposes	132,963
3900	Unrestricted	1,281,236
3000	Total Net Position	<u>\$ 4,787,918</u>

The accompanying notes are an integral part of this statement.

SNOOK INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
STATEMENT OF ACTIVITIES
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

Data Control Codes	Functions/Programs	1 Expenses	3 Program Revenues		4 Operating Grants and Contributions	Net (Expense) Revenue and Changes in Net Position
			Charges for Services	Governmental Activities		
	Governmental Activities:					
11	<i>Instruction</i>	\$ 3,137,926	\$ 35,211	\$ 494,333	\$ (2,608,382)	
12	<i>Instructional Resources and Media Services</i>	45,448	--	28,779	(16,669)	
13	<i>Curriculum and Staff Development</i>	188,661	--	75,986	(112,675)	
21	<i>Instructional Leadership</i>	13,829	--	650	(13,179)	
23	<i>School Leadership</i>	442,463	--	45,078	(397,385)	
31	<i>Guidance, Counseling, & Evaluation Services</i>	150,043	--	15,540	(134,503)	
33	<i>Health Services</i>	61,210	--	6,506	(54,704)	
34	<i>Student Transportation</i>	257,986	--	19,372	(238,614)	
35	<i>Food Service</i>	451,070	53,333	248,720	(149,017)	
36	<i>Cocurricular/Extracurricular Activities</i>	454,674	23,522	34,730	(396,422)	
41	<i>General Administration</i>	468,834	--	39,197	(429,637)	
51	<i>Facilities Maintenance and Operations</i>	667,660	--	46,125	(621,535)	
52	<i>Security and Monitoring Services</i>	14,523	--	677	(13,846)	
53	<i>Data Processing Services</i>	164,816	--	15,111	(149,705)	
61	<i>Community Services</i>	5,718	--	5,719	1	
72	<i>Interest on Long-term Debt</i>	254,634	--	--	(254,634)	
73	<i>Bond Issuance Costs and Fees</i>	450	--	--	(450)	
93	<i>Payments Related to Shared Services Arrangements</i>	43,137	--	2,002	(41,135)	
99	<i>Other Intergovernmental Charges</i>	110,358	--	--	(110,358)	
TG	Total Governmental Activities	<u>6,933,440</u>	<u>112,066</u>	<u>1,078,525</u>	<u>(5,742,849)</u>	
TP	Total Primary Government	<u>\$ 6,933,440</u>	<u>\$ 112,066</u>	<u>\$ 1,078,525</u>	<u>(5,742,849)</u>	
	General Revenues:					
MT	<i>Property Taxes, Levied for General Purposes</i>				2,604,403	
DT	<i>Property Taxes, Levied for Debt Service</i>				457,670	
IE	<i>Investment Earnings</i>				5,560	
GC	<i>Grants and Contributions Not Restricted to Specific Programs</i>				2,159,304	
MI	<i>Miscellaneous</i>				35,791	
	Special and Extraordinary Items:					
S1	<i>Special Item Inflow</i>				6,958	
TR	Total General Revenues				<u>5,269,686</u>	
CN	Change in Net Position				<u>(473,163)</u>	
NB	Net Position - Beginning				5,261,081	
NE	Net Position - Ending				<u>\$ 4,787,918</u>	

The accompanying notes are an integral part of this statement.

SNOOK INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

BALANCE SHEET - GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS

AUGUST 31, 2017

Data Control Codes	10 General Fund	50 Debt Service Fund	Other Governmental Funds	98 Total Governmental Funds	
ASSETS:					
1110	Cash and Cash Equivalents	\$ 1,319,509	\$ 490,077	\$ 88,512	\$ 1,898,098
1120	Current Investments	--	--	128,074	128,074
1220	Property Taxes Receivable	374,089	95,419	--	469,508
1230	Allowance for Uncollectible Taxes	(111,721)	(27,327)	--	(139,047)
1240	Due from Other Governments	210,131	2,500	51,306	263,937
1260	Due from Other Funds	40,114	--	--	40,114
1290	Other Receivables	2,925	--	--	2,925
1410	Prepaid Items	5,766	--	--	5,766
1000	Total Assets	<u>1,840,813</u>	<u>560,669</u>	<u>267,892</u>	<u>2,669,374</u>
LIABILITIES:					
Current Liabilities:					
2110	Accounts Payable	\$ 123,162	\$ --	\$ 14,853	\$ 138,015
2150	Payroll Deductions & Withholdings	60,073	--	--	60,073
2160	Accrued Wages Payable	136,421	--	10,164	146,585
2170	Due to Other Funds	--	--	40,114	40,114
2180	Due to Other Governments	--	--	892	892
2200	Accrued Expenditures	3,021	--	559	3,580
2300	Deferred Revenue	6,535	--	1,550	8,085
2000	Total Liabilities	<u>329,212</u>	<u>--</u>	<u>68,132</u>	<u>397,344</u>
DEFERRED INFLOWS OF RESOURCES:					
2600	Unavailable Revenue for Property Taxes	262,368	68,093	--	330,461
2600	Total Deferred Inflows of Resources	<u>262,368</u>	<u>68,093</u>	<u>--</u>	<u>330,461</u>
FUND BALANCES:					
Nonspendable Fund Balances:					
3430	Prepaid Items	5,766	--	--	5,766
Restricted Fund Balances:					
3450	Federal/State Funds Grant Restrictions	--	--	41,214	41,214
3470	Capital Acquisitions & Contractual Obligations	--	--	44	44
3480	Retirement of Long-Term Debt	--	492,576	--	492,576
3490	Other Restrictions of Fund Balance	--	--	132,963	132,963
Assigned Fund Balances:					
3550	Construction	--	--	25,539	25,539
3600	Unassigned	1,243,467	--	--	1,243,467
3000	Total Fund Balances	<u>1,249,233</u>	<u>492,576</u>	<u>199,760</u>	<u>1,941,569</u>
4000	Total Liabilities, Deferred Inflows of Resources] and Fund Balances	<u>\$ 1,840,813</u>	<u>\$ 560,669</u>	<u>\$ 267,892</u>	<u>\$ 2,669,374</u>

SNOOK INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
*RECONCILIATION OF THE GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS BALANCE SHEET
 TO THE STATEMENT OF NET POSITION
 AUGUST 31, 2017*

Total fund balances - governmental funds balance sheet	\$ 1,941,569
Amounts reported for governmental activities in the Statement of Net Position (SNP) are different because:	
Capital assets used in governmental activities are not reported in the funds.	11,235,206
Property taxes receivable unavailable to pay for current period expenditures are deferred in the funds.	330,461
The assets and liabilities of internal service funds are included in governmental activities in the SNP.	31,267
Payables for bond principal which are not due in the current period are not reported in the funds.	(7,934,632)
Payables for bond interest which are not due in the current period are not reported in the funds.	(11,340)
Payables for notes which are not due in the current period are not reported in the funds.	(210,075)
Recognition of the District's proportionate share of the net pension liability is not reported in the funds.	(1,005,806)
Deferred inflows of resources related to Teacher Retirement System of Texas (TRS) are not reported in the funds.	(57,986)
Deferred outflows of resources related to TRS are not reported in the funds.	<u>469,254</u>
Net position of governmental activities - Statement of Net Position	<u>\$ 4,787,918</u>

The accompanying notes are an integral part of this statement.

SNOOK INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
STATEMENT OF REVENUES, EXPENDITURES, AND CHANGES
IN FUND BALANCES - GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

Data Control Codes	10 General Fund	50 Debt Service Fund	Other Governmental Funds	98 Total Governmental Funds
REVENUES:				
5700 <i>Local and Intermediate Sources</i>	\$ 2,667,781	\$ 464,714	\$ 54,848	\$ 3,187,343
5800 <i>State Program Revenues</i>	2,412,106	--	44,936	2,457,042
5900 <i>Federal Program Revenues</i>	17,914	--	501,280	519,194
5020 Total Revenues	<u>5,097,801</u>	<u>464,714</u>	<u>601,064</u>	<u>6,163,579</u>
EXPENDITURES:				
Current:				
0011 <i>Instruction</i>	2,459,754	--	199,273	2,659,027
0012 <i>Instructional Resources and Media Services</i>	10,224	--	27,954	38,178
0013 <i>Curriculum and Staff Development</i>	115,651	--	65,883	181,534
0021 <i>Instructional Leadership</i>	10,795	--	--	10,795
0023 <i>School Leadership</i>	416,758	--	2,320	419,078
0031 <i>Guidance, Counseling, & Evaluation Services</i>	141,203	--	--	141,203
0033 <i>Health Services</i>	57,933	--	--	57,933
0034 <i>Student Transportation</i>	197,232	--	--	197,232
0035 <i>Food Service</i>	--	--	301,639	301,639
0036 <i>Cocurricular/Extracurricular Activities</i>	424,843	--	--	424,843
0041 <i>General Administration</i>	433,043	--	1,149	434,192
0051 <i>Facilities Maintenance and Operations</i>	623,219	--	--	623,219
0052 <i>Security and Monitoring Services</i>	14,523	--	--	14,523
0053 <i>Data Processing Services</i>	161,205	--	--	161,205
0061 <i>Community Services</i>	--	--	5,718	5,718
0071 <i>Principal on Long-term Debt</i>	29,771	265,000	--	294,771
0072 <i>Interest on Long-term Debt</i>	573	263,776	--	264,349
0073 <i>Bond Issuance Costs and Fees</i>	--	450	--	450
0081 <i>Capital Outlay</i>	4,813	--	--	4,813
0093 <i>Payments to Shared Services Arrangements</i>	43,137	--	--	43,137
0099 <i>Other Intergovernmental Charges</i>	110,358	--	--	110,358
6030 Total Expenditures	<u>5,255,035</u>	<u>529,226</u>	<u>603,936</u>	<u>6,388,197</u>
1100 Excess (Deficiency) of Revenues Over (Under)				
1100 Expenditures	<u>(157,234)</u>	<u>(64,512)</u>	<u>(2,872)</u>	<u>(224,618)</u>
Other Financing Sources and (Uses):				
7915 <i>Transfers In</i>	--	--	20,000	20,000
8911 <i>Transfers Out</i>	<u>(48,159)</u>	--	<u>(6,574)</u>	<u>(54,733)</u>
7080 Total Other Financing Sources and (Uses)	<u>(48,159)</u>	--	<u>13,426</u>	<u>(34,733)</u>
SPECIAL ITEM:				
7918 <i>Special Item (Resource)</i>	6,958	--	--	6,958
1200 Net Change in Fund Balances	<u>(198,435)</u>	<u>(64,512)</u>	<u>10,554</u>	<u>(252,393)</u>
0100 Fund Balances - Beginning	<u>1,447,668</u>	<u>557,088</u>	<u>189,206</u>	<u>2,193,962</u>
3000 Fund Balances - Ending	<u>\$ 1,249,233</u>	<u>\$ 492,576</u>	<u>\$ 199,760</u>	<u>\$ 1,941,569</u>

The accompanying notes are an integral part of this statement.

SNOOK INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

*RECONCILIATION OF THE STATEMENT OF REVENUES, EXPENDITURES,
AND CHANGES IN FUND BALANCES OF GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS
TO THE STATEMENT OF ACTIVITIES
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017*

Net change in fund balances - total governmental funds	\$ (252,393)
Amounts reported for governmental activities in the Statement of Activities (SOA) are different because:	
Capital outlays are not reported as expenses in the SOA.	7,024
The depreciation of capital assets used in governmental activities is not reported in the funds.	(485,288)
Certain property tax revenues are deferred in the funds. This is the change in these amounts this year.	28,149
Repayment of bond principal is an expenditure in the funds but is not an expense in the SOA.	265,000
Repayment of loan principal is an expenditure in the funds but is not an expense in the SOA.	29,771
Bond issuance costs and similar items are amortized in the SOA but not in the funds.	(10,442)
(Increase) decrease in accrued interest from beginning of period to end of period.	566
The net revenue (expense) of internal service funds is reported with governmental activities.	9,584
Amortization of bond premiums.	19,591
Implementing GASB 68 required certain expenditures to be de-expended and recorded as deferred outflows of resources.	261,591
The District's share of the unrecognized deferred inflows and outflows for the pension plan was amortized.	<u>(346,315)</u>
Change in net position of governmental activities - Statement of Activities	<u>\$ (47,316.3)</u>

The accompanying notes are an integral part of this statement.

SNOOK INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

STATEMENT OF NET POSITION

INTERNAL SERVICE FUND

AUGUST 31, 2017

Data Control Codes		Nonmajor Internal Service Fund
		Public Entity Risk Pool
	ASSETS:	
	Current Assets:	
1110	Cash and Cash Equivalents	\$ 49,453
	Total Current Assets	<u>49,453</u>
1000	Total Assets	<u>49,453</u>
	LIABILITIES:	
	Current Liabilities:	
2200	Accrued Expenses	\$ 18,186
	Total Current Liabilities	<u>18,186</u>
2000	Total Liabilities	<u>18,186</u>
	NET POSITION:	
3900	Unrestricted	31,267
3000	Total Net Position	<u>\$ 31,267</u>

The accompanying notes are an integral part of this statement.

SNOOK INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
STATEMENT OF REVENUES, EXPENSES, AND CHANGES
IN FUND NET POSITION - INTERNAL SERVICE FUND
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

Data Control Codes	Nonmajor Internal Service Fund
	Public Entity Risk Pool
	<u> </u>
OPERATING EXPENSES:	
6100 <i>Payroll Costs</i>	\$ 23,903
6200 <i>Professional and Contracted Services</i>	1,246
6030 Total Expenses	<u>25,149</u>
Income (Loss) before Contributions and Transfers	(25,149)
7915 <i>Transfers In</i>	<u>34,733</u>
1300 Change in Net Position	9,584
0100 Total Net Position - Beginning	21,683
3300 Total Net Position - Ending	<u>\$ 31,267</u>

The accompanying notes are an integral part of this statement.

SNOOK INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

STATEMENT OF CASH FLOWS

INTERNAL SERVICE FUND

FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

	Nonmajor Internal Service Fund	Public Entity Risk Pool
Cash Flows from Operating Activities:		
<i>Cash Payments to Employees and Suppliers</i>	\$ (20,226)	
Net Cash Provided (Used) by Operating Activities	<u>(20,226)</u>	
Cash Flows from Non-capital Financing Activities:		
<i>Operating Transfers From (To) Other Funds</i>	34,733	
Net Cash Provided (Used) by Non-capital Financing Activities	<u>34,733</u>	
Net Increase (Decrease) in Cash and Cash Equivalents	14,507	
Cash and Cash Equivalents at Beginning of Year	34,946	
Cash and Cash Equivalents at End of Year	<u>\$ 49,453</u>	
Reconciliation of Operating Income (Loss) to Net Cash Provided (Used) by Operating Activities:		
Operating Income (Loss)	\$ (25,149)	
Adjustments to Reconcile Operating Income (Loss) to Net Cash Provided (Used):		
Change in Assets and Liabilities:		
<i>Increase (Decrease) in Accrued Expenses</i>	4,923	
Total Adjustments	<u>4,923</u>	
Net Cash Provided (Used) by Operating Activities	<u>\$ (20,226)</u>	

The accompanying notes are an integral part of this statement.

SNOOK INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

STATEMENT OF FIDUCIARY NET POSITION

FIDUCIARY FUNDS

AUGUST 31, 2017

Data Control Codes		Agency Fund
		Student Activity
	ASSETS:	
1110	<i>Cash and Cash Equivalents</i>	\$ 54,382
1000	Total Assets	<u>54,382</u>
	LIABILITIES:	
	Current Liabilities:	
2190	<i>Due to Student Groups</i>	\$ 543 0
2000	Total Liabilities	<u>54,382</u>
	NET POSITION:	
3000	Total Net Position	<u><u>\$ --</u></u>

The accompanying notes are an integral part of this statement.

This page is left blank intentionally.

SNOOK INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

A. Summary of Significant Accounting Policies

The basic financial statements of Snook Independent School District (the "District") have been prepared in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America (GAAP) applicable to governmental units in conjunction with the Texas Education Agency's Financial Accountability System Resource Guide ("Resource Guide"). The Governmental Accounting Standards Board (GASB) is the accepted standard setting body for establishing governmental accounting and financial reporting principles.

1. Reporting Entity

The Board of School Trustees (the "Board"), a seven-member group, has governance responsibilities over all activities related to public elementary and secondary education within the jurisdiction of the District. The Board is elected by the public and has the exclusive power and duty to govern and oversee the management of the public schools of the District. All powers and duties not specifically delegated by statute to the Texas Education Agency (TEA) or to the State Board of Education are reserved for the Board, and the TEA may not substitute its judgment for the lawful exercise of those powers and duties by the Board. The District receives funding from local, state, and federal government sources and must comply with the requirements of those funding entities. However, the District is not included in any other governmental reporting entity and there are no component units included within the District's reporting entity.

2. Basis of Presentation, Basis of Accounting

a. Basis of Presentation

Government-wide Financial Statements: The statement of net position and the statement of activities include the financial activities of the overall government, except for fiduciary activities. Eliminations have been made to minimize the double-counting of internal activities. Governmental activities generally are financed through taxes, intergovernmental revenues, and other nonexchange transactions.

The statement of activities presents a comparison between direct expenses and program revenues for each function of the District's governmental activities. Direct expenses are those that are specifically associated with a program or function and, therefore, are clearly identifiable to a particular function. The District does not allocate indirect expenses in the statement of activities. Program revenues include (a) fees, fines, and charges paid by the recipients of goods or services offered by the programs and (b) grants and contributions that are restricted to meeting the operational or capital requirements of a particular program. Revenues that are not classified as program revenues, including all taxes, are presented as general revenues.

Fund Financial Statements: The fund financial statements provide information about the District's funds, with separate statements presented for each fund category. The emphasis of fund financial statements is on major governmental funds, each displayed in a separate column. All remaining governmental funds are aggregated and reported as nonmajor funds.

Proprietary fund operating revenues, such as charges for services, result from exchange transactions associated with the principal activity of the fund. Exchange transactions are those in which each party receives and gives up essentially equal values. Nonoperating revenues, such as subsidies and investment earnings, result from nonexchange transactions or ancillary activities.

The District reports the following major governmental funds:

General Fund: This is the District's primary operating fund. It accounts for all financial resources of the District except those required to be accounted for in another fund.

SNOOK INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

Debt Service Fund: This fund is used to account for tax revenues and for the payment of principal, interest, and other related costs on long-term debt for which a tax has been dedicated. This is a budgeted fund and a separate bank account is maintained for this fund. Any unused sinking fund balances are transferred to the General Fund after all of the related debt obligations have been met.

In addition, the District reports the following fund types:

Special Revenue Funds: These funds are used to account for revenues and expenditures related to grant awards and entitlements from federal, state, and local agencies. These funds are primarily on a reimbursement basis. Nearly all of these funds cannot carry a fund balance and, other than the food service fund, none of these is legally required to have an adopted budget.

Permanent Fund: These funds are governmental funds that are used to account for and report resources that are restricted to the extent that only earnings, and not principal, may be used for purposes that support the reporting government's programs.

Capital Projects Fund: This fund is used to account for revenues and expenditures related to projects financed by the proceeds of bond issues or capital projects otherwise mandated to be accounted for in this fund. This fund is not required to be budgeted on an annual basis.

Internal Service Funds: These funds are used to account for revenues and expenses related to services provided to parties inside the District. These funds facilitate distribution of support costs to the users of support services on a cost-reimbursement basis. Because the principal users of the internal services are the District's governmental activities, this fund type is included in the "Governmental Activities" column of the government-wide financial statements.

Agency Funds: These funds are used to report student activity funds and other resources held in a purely custodial capacity (assets equal liabilities). Agency funds typically involve only the receipt, temporary investment, and remittance of fiduciary resources to individuals, private organizations, or other governments.

Fiduciary funds are reported in the fiduciary fund financial statements. However, because their assets are held in a trustee or agent capacity and are therefore not available to support District programs, these funds are not included in the government-wide statements.

b. Measurement Focus and Basis of Accounting

Government-wide, Proprietary, and Fiduciary Fund Financial Statements: These financial statements are reported using the economic resources measurement focus. The government-wide, proprietary, and fiduciary fund financial statements are reported using the accrual basis of accounting. Revenues are recorded when earned and expenses are recorded at the time liabilities are incurred, regardless of when the related cash flows take place. Nonexchange transactions, in which the District gives (or receives) value without directly receiving (or giving) equal value in exchange, include property taxes, grants, entitlements, and donations. On an accrual basis, revenue from property taxes is recognized in the fiscal year for which the taxes are levied. Revenue from grants, entitlements, and donations is recognized in the fiscal year in which all eligibility requirements have been satisfied.

SNOOK INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

Governmental Fund Financial Statements: Governmental funds are reported using the current financial resources measurement focus and the modified accrual basis of accounting. Under this method, revenues are recognized when measurable and available. The District considers all revenues reported in the governmental funds to be available if the revenues are collected within sixty days after year-end. Revenues from local sources consist primarily of property taxes. Property tax revenues and revenues received from the State are recognized under the susceptible-to-accrual concept. Miscellaneous revenues are recorded as revenue when received in cash because they are generally not measurable until actually received. Investment earnings are recorded as earned, since they are both measurable and available. Expenditures are recorded when the related fund liability is incurred, except for principal and interest on general long-term debt, claims and judgments, and compensated absences, which are recognized as expenditures to the extent they have matured. General capital asset acquisitions are reported as expenditures in governmental funds. Proceeds of general long-term debt and acquisitions under capital leases are reported as other financing sources.

When the District incurs an expenditure or expense for which both restricted and unrestricted resources may be used, it is the District's policy to use restricted resources first, then unrestricted resources.

3. Financial Statement Amounts

a. Cash and Cash Equivalents

For purposes of the statement of cash flows, highly liquid investments are considered to be cash equivalents if they have a maturity of three months or less when purchased.

b. Property Taxes

Property taxes are levied by October 1 on the assessed value listed as of the prior January 1 for all real and business personal property in conformity with Subtitle E, Texas Property Tax Code. Taxes are due on receipt of the tax bill and are delinquent if not paid before February 1 of the year following the year in which imposed. On January 1 of each year, a tax lien attaches to property to secure the payment of all taxes, penalties, and interest ultimately imposed. Property tax revenues are considered available when they become due or past due and receivable within the current period.

Allowances for uncollectible tax receivables within the General and Debt Service Funds are based upon historical experience in collecting property taxes. Uncollectible personal property taxes are periodically reviewed and written off, but the District is prohibited from writing off real property taxes without specific statutory authority from the Texas Legislature.

c. Inventories and Prepaid Items

Inventories of supplies on the balance sheet are stated at weighted average cost, while inventories of food commodities are recorded at market values supplied by the Texas Department of Human Services. Inventory items are recorded as expenditures when they are consumed. Supplies are used for almost all functions of activity, while food commodities are used only in the food service program. Although commodities are received at no cost, their fair market value is supplied by the Texas Department of Human Services and recorded as inventory and deferred revenue when received. When requisitioned, inventory and deferred revenue are relieved, expenditures are charged, and revenue is recognized for an equal amount. Inventories also include plant maintenance and operation supplies, as well as instructional supplies.

Certain payments to vendors reflect costs applicable to future accounting periods and are recorded as prepaid items.

SNOOK INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

d. Capital Assets

Purchased or constructed capital assets are reported at cost or estimated historical cost. Donated fixed assets are recorded at acquisition value at the date of the donation. The cost of normal maintenance and repairs that do not add to the value of the asset or materially extend assets' lives are not capitalized. A capitalization threshold of \$5,000 is used.

Capital assets are being depreciated using the straight-line method over the following estimated useful lives:

<u>Asset Class</u>	<u>Estimated Useful Lives</u>
Building and Improvements	20-40
Equipment	5-20
Vehicles	8-10

e. Deferred Outflows and Inflows of Resources

In addition to assets, the statement of financial position will sometimes report a separate section for deferred outflows of resources. This separate financial statement, *deferred outflows of resources*, represents a consumption of net position that applies to one or more future periods and so will *not* be recognized as an outflow of resources (expenses/expenditures) until then. The District has six items that qualify for reporting in this category on the government-wide statement of net position. A deferred charge on refunding results from the difference in the carrying value of refunded debt and its reacquisition price. This amount is deferred and amortized over the shorter of the life of the refunded or refunding debt. Deferred charges have been recognized as a result of differences between the actuarial expectations and the actual economic experience, for the changes in actuarial assumptions, and for the changes in proportion and difference between the employer's contributions and the proportionate share of contributions related to the District's defined benefit pension plan. These amounts are deferred and amortized over the average of the expected service lives of pension plan members. A deferred charge has been recognized for the employer plan contributions that were made subsequent to the measurement date through the end of the District's fiscal year. This amount is deferred and recognized as a reduction to the net position liability during the measurement period in which the contributions were made. Deferred outflows of resources are recognized for the difference between the projected and actual investment earnings on the pension plan assets. This amount is deferred and amortized over a period of five years.

In addition to liabilities, the statement of financial position will sometimes report a separate section for deferred inflows of resources. This separate financial statement element, *deferred inflows of resources*, represents an acquisition of net position that applies to one or more future periods and so will *not* be recognized as an inflow of resources (revenue) until that time. The District has three types of items that qualify for reporting in this category in the government-wide statement of net position. Deferred charges have been recognized as a result of differences between the actuarial expectations and the actual economic experience, for the changes in actuarial assumptions, and for the changes in proportion and difference between the employer's contributions and the proportionate share of contributions related to the District's defined benefit pension plan. These amounts are amortized over the average of the expected service lives of pension plan members. At the fund level, the District has only one type of item, which arises only under a modified accrual basis of accounting, that qualifies for reporting in this category. Accordingly, the item, *unavailable revenue*, is reported only in the governmental funds balance sheet. The governmental funds report unavailable revenues from property taxes. This amount is deferred and recognized as an inflow of resources in the period that the amount becomes available.

SNOOK INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

f. Receivable and Payable Balances

The District believes that sufficient detail of receivable and payable balances is provided in the financial statements to avoid the obscuring of significant components by aggregation. Therefore, no disclosure is provided which disaggregates those balances.

There are no significant receivables which are not scheduled for collection within one year of year end.

g. Interfund Activity

Interfund activity results from loans, services provided, reimbursements, or transfers between funds. Loans are reported as interfund receivables and payables as appropriate and are subject to elimination upon consolidation. Services provided, deemed to be at market or near market rates, are treated as revenues and expenditures or expenses. Reimbursements occur when one fund incurs a cost, charges the appropriate benefiting fund, and reduces its related cost as a reimbursement. All other interfund transactions are treated as transfers. Transfers In and Transfers Out are netted and presented as a single "Transfers" line on the government-wide statement of activities. Similarly, interfund receivables and payables are netted and presented as a single "Internal Balances" line of the government-wide statement of net position.

h. Use of Estimates

The preparation of financial statements in conformity with GAAP requires the use of management's estimates.

i. Data Control Codes

Data Control Codes appear in the rows and above the columns of certain financial statements. The TEA requires the display of these codes in the financial statements filed with TEA in order to ensure accuracy in building a statewide database for policy development and funding plans.

j. Fund Balances - Governmental Funds

Fund balances of the governmental funds are classified as follows:

Nonspendable Fund Balance - represents amounts that cannot be spent because they are either not in spendable form (such as inventory or prepaid insurance) or legally required to remain intact (such as notes receivable or principal of a permanent fund).

Restricted Fund Balance - represents amounts that are constrained by external parties, constitutional provisions, or enabling legislation.

Committed Fund Balance - represents amounts that can only be used for a specific purpose because of a formal action by the District's Board of Trustees. Committed amounts cannot be used for any other purpose unless the Board of Trustees removes those constraints by taking the same type of formal action. Committed fund balance amounts may be used for other purposes with appropriate due process by the Board of Trustees. Commitments are typically done through adoption and amendment of the budget. Committed fund balance amounts differ from restricted balances in that the constraints on their use do not come from outside parties, constitutional provisions, or enabling legislation.

Assigned Fund Balance - represents amounts which the District intends to use for a specific purpose, but that do not meet the criteria to be classified as restricted or committed. Intent may be stipulated by the Board of Trustees or by an official or body to which the Board of Trustees delegates the authority. Specific amounts that are not restricted or committed in a special revenue, capital projects, debt service, or permanent fund are assigned for purposes in accordance with the nature of their fund type or the fund's primary purpose. Assignments within the general fund convey that the intended use of those amounts is for a specific purpose that is narrower than the general purposes of the District itself.

SNOOK INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

Unassigned Fund Balance - represents amounts which are unconstrained in that they may be spent for any purpose. Only the general fund reports a positive unassigned fund balance. Other governmental funds might report a negative balance in this classification because of overspending for specific purposes for which amounts had been restricted, committed, or assigned.

k. Net Position Flow Assumption

Sometimes the District will fund outlays for a particular purpose from both restricted (e.g., restricted bond or grant proceeds) and unrestricted resources. In order to calculate the amounts to report as restricted net position and unrestricted net position in the government-wide and proprietary fund financial statements, a flow assumption must be made about the order in which the resources are considered to be applied. It is the District's policy to consider restricted net position to have been depleted before unrestricted net position is applied.

l. Fund Balance Flow Assumptions

Sometimes the District will fund outlays for a particular purpose from both restricted and unrestricted resources (the total of committed, assigned, and unassigned fund balance). In order to calculate the amounts to report as restricted, committed, assigned, and unassigned fund balance in the governmental fund financial statements, a flow assumption must be made about the order in which the resources are considered to be applied. It is the District's policy to consider restricted fund balance to have been depleted before using any of the components of unrestricted fund balance. Further, when the components of unrestricted fund balance can be used for the same purpose, committed fund balance is depleted first, followed by assigned fund balance. Unassigned fund balance is applied last.

m. Program Revenues

Amounts reported as a *program revenues* includes 1) charges to customers or applicants who purchase, use, or directly benefit from goods, services, or privileges provided by a given function or segment and 2) grants and contributions (including special assessments) that are restricted to meeting the operational capital requirements of a particular segment. All taxes, including those dedicated for specific purposes, and other internally dedicated resources are reported as general revenues rather than as program revenues.

4. Pensions

The fiduciary net position of the Teacher Retirement System of Texas (TRS) has been determined using the flow of economic resources measurement focus and full accrual basis of accounting. This includes for purposes of measuring the net pension liability, deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources related to pensions, pension expense, and information about assets, liabilities, and additions to/deductions from TRS' fiduciary net position. Benefit payments (including refunds of employee contributions) are recognized when due and payable in accordance with the benefit terms. Investments are reported at fair value.

B. Compliance and Accountability

1. Finance-Related Legal and Contractual Provisions

In accordance with GASB Statement No. 38, "*Certain Financial Statement Note Disclosures*," violations of finance-related legal and contractual provisions, if any, are reported below, along with actions taken to address such violations:

<u>Violation</u>	<u>Action Taken</u>
None reported	Not applicable

SNOOK INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

2. Deficit Fund Balance or Fund Net Position of Individual Funds

Following are funds having deficit fund balances or fund net position at year end, if any, along with remarks which address such deficits:

<u>Fund Name</u>	<u>Deficit Amount</u>	<u>Remarks</u>
None reported	Not applicable	Not applicable

C. Deposits and Investments

The District's funds are required to be deposited and invested under the terms of a depository contract. The depository bank deposits for safekeeping and trust with the District's agent bank approved pledged securities in an amount sufficient to protect District funds on a day-to-day basis during the period of the contract. The pledge of approved securities is waived only to the extent of the depository bank's dollar amount of Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (FDIC) insurance.

1. Cash Deposits:

At August 31, 2017, the carrying amount of the District's deposits (cash, certificates of deposit, and interest-bearing savings accounts included in temporary investments) was \$2,128,995 and the bank balance was \$2,149,138. The District's cash deposits at August 31, 2017, and during the year ended August 31, 2017, were entirely covered by FDIC insurance or by pledged collateral held by the District's agent bank in the District's name.

2. Investments:

The District is required by Government Code Chapter 2256, The Public Funds Investment Act (the "Act"), to adopt, implement, and publicize an investment policy. That policy must address the following areas: (1) safety of principal and liquidity, (2) portfolio diversification, (3) allowable investments, (4) acceptable risk levels, (5) expected rates of return, (6) maximum allowable stated maturity of portfolio investments, (7) maximum average dollar-weighted maturity allowed based on the stated maturity date for the portfolio, (8) investment staff quality and capabilities, and (9) bid solicitation preferences for certificates of deposit.

The Act requires an annual audit of investment practices. Audit procedures in this area conducted as a part of the audit of the basic financial statements disclosed that in the areas of investment practices, management reports, and establishment of appropriate policies, the District adhered to the requirements of the Act. Additionally, investment practices of the District were in accordance with local policies.

The Act determines the types of investments which are allowable for the District. These include, with certain restrictions, 1) obligations of the U.S. Treasury, U.S. agencies, and the State of Texas, 2) certificates of deposit, 3) certain municipal securities, 4) securities lending program, 5) repurchase agreements, 6) bankers acceptances, 7) mutual funds, 8) investment pools, 9) guaranteed investment contracts, and 10) commercial paper.

The District's investments at August 31, 2017 are shown below.

<u>Investment or Investment Type</u>	<u>Fair Value</u>	<u>Weighted Average Maturity (Years)</u>
TexPool Investment	\$ 1,009	-
Certificate of Deposit	127,065	0.870
Total Investments	<u>\$ 128,074</u>	
Portfolio weighted average maturity		0.870

SNOOK INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

3. Analysis of Specific Deposit and Investment Risks

GASB Statement No. 40 requires a determination as to whether the District was exposed to the following specific investment risks at year end and if so, the reporting of certain related disclosures:

a. Credit Risk

Credit risk is the risk that an issuer or other counterparty to an investment will not fulfill its obligations. The ratings of securities by nationally recognized rating agencies are designed to give an indication of credit risk. At year end, the District was not significantly exposed to credit risk.

At August 31, 2017, the District's investments, other than those which are obligations of or guaranteed by the U. B. Government, are rated as to credit quality as follows:

<u>Investment or Investment Type</u>	<u>Administrator</u>	<u>Rating</u>
TexPool Investment	Federated Investors, Inc	AAAm*

*Rated by Btandard & Poor's Investor Services

b. Custodial Credit Risk

Deposits are exposed to custodial credit risk if they are not covered by depository insurance and the deposits are uncollateralized, collateralized with securities held by the pledging financial institution, or collateralized with securities held by the pledging financial institution's trust department or agent but not in the District's name.

Investment securities are exposed to custodial credit risk if the securities are uninsured, are not registered in the name of the government, and are held by either the counterparty or the counterparty's trust department or agent but not in the District's name.

At year end, the District was not exposed to custodial credit risk.

c. Concentration of Credit Risk

This risk is the risk of loss attributed to the magnitude of a government's investment in a single issuer. At year end, the District was not exposed to concentration of credit risk.

d. Interest Rate Risk

This is the risk that changes in interest rates will adversely affect the fair value of an investment. At year end, the District was not exposed to interest rate risk.

e. Foreign Currency Risk

This is the risk that exchange rates will adversely affect the fair value of an investment. At year end, the District was not exposed to foreign currency risk.

SNOOK INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

Investment Accounting Policy

The District's general policy is to report money market investments and short-term participating interest-earning investment contracts at amortized cost and to report nonparticipating interest-earning investment contracts using a cost-based measure. However, if the fair value of an investment is significantly affected by the impairment of the credit standing of the issuer or by other factors, it is reported at fair value. All other investments are reported at fair value unless a legal contract exists which guarantees a higher value. The term "short-term" refers to investments which have a remaining term of one year or less at time of purchase. The term "nonparticipating" means that the investment's value does not vary with market interest rate changes. Nonnegotiable certificates of deposit are examples of nonparticipating interest-earning investment contracts.

Public Funds Investment Pools

Public funds investment pools in Texas (the "Pools") are established under the authority of the Interlocal Cooperation Act, Chapter 79 of the Texas Government Code, and are subject to the provisions of the Public Funds Investment Act (the "Act"), Chapter 2256 of the Texas Government Code. In addition to other provisions of the Act designed to promote liquidity and safety of principal, the Act requires Pools to: 1) have an advisory board composed of participants in the Pool and other persons who do not have a business relationship with the Pool and are qualified to advise the Pool, 2) maintain a continuous rating of no lower than 'AAA' or 'AAA-m' or an equivalent rating by at least one nationally recognized rating service, and 3) maintain the market value of its underlying investment portfolio within one half of one percent of the value of its shares.

The District's investments in Pools are reported at an amount determined by the fair value per share of the Pool's underlying portfolio, unless the Pool is 2a7-like, in which case they are reported at share value. A 2a7-like Pool is one which is not registered with the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC) as an investment company, but nevertheless has a policy that it will, and does, operate in a manner consistent with the SEC's Rule 2a7 of the Investment Company Act of 1940.

TexPool

The District invests in the Texas Local Government Investment Pool ("TexPool"), which is a local government investment pool that was established in conformity with the Interlocal Cooperation Act, Chapter 791 of the Texas Government Code, and operates under the Public Funds Investment Act, Chapter 2256 of the Texas Government Code. The State Comptroller of Public Accounts oversees TexPool. Federated Investors, Inc. is the administrator and investment manager of TexPool under a contract with the State Comptroller. In accordance with the Public Funds Investment Act, the State Comptroller has appointed the TexPool Investment Advisory Board to advise with respect to TexPool. The Board is composed equally of participants in TexPool and other persons who do not have a business relationship with TexPool and are qualified to advise in respect to TexPool. The Advisory Board members review the investment policy and management fee structure. TexPool is rated 'AAAm' by Standard & Poor's and operates in a manner consistent with the SEC's Rule 2a7 of the Investment Company Act of 1940. All investments are stated at amortized cost, which usually approximates the market value of the securities. The stated objective of TexPool is to maintain a stable average \$1.00 per unit net asset value; however, the \$1.00 net asset value is not guaranteed or insured. The financial statements can be obtained from the Texas Trust Safekeeping Trust Company website at www.ttstc.org.

SNOOK INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

D. Capital Assets

Capital asset activity for the year ended August 31, 2017 was as follows:

	Beginning Balances	Increases	Decreases	Ending Balances
<u>Governmental activities:</u>				
<i>Capital assets not being depreciated:</i>				
Land	\$ 320,322	\$ --	\$ --	\$ 320,322
Total capital assets not being depreciated	320,322	--	--	320,322
<i>Capital assets being depreciated:</i>				
Buildings and improvements	16,304,510	--	--	16,304,510
Equipment	233,663	7,024	--	240,687
Vehicles	1,008,139	--	--	1,008,139
Total capital assets being depreciated	17,546,312	7,024	--	17,553,335
Less accumulated depreciation for:				
Buildings and improvements	(5,345,891)	(409,868)	--	(5,755,759)
Equipment	(129,251)	(17,515)	--	(146,766)
Vehicles	(678,021)	(57,905)	--	(735,926)
Total accumulated depreciation	(6,153,163)	(485,288)	--	(6,638,451)
Total capital assets being depreciated, net	11,393,149	(478,265)	--	10,914,884
Governmental activities capital assets, net	\$ 11,713,471	\$ (478,265)	\$ --	\$ 11,235,206

Depreciation was charged to functions as follows:

Instruction	\$ 276,791
Curriculum and Staff Development	3,107
School Leadership	985
Guidance, Counseling, and Evaluation Services	182
Health Services	114
Student Transportation	54,182
Food Services	118,867
Extracurricular Activities	8,351
General Administration	5,479
Plant Maintenance and Operations	15,214
Security and Monitoring Services	2,015
	<u>\$ 485,288</u>

E. Interfund Balances and Activities

1. Due To and From Other Funds

Balances due to and due from other funds at August 31, 2017 consisted of the following:

Due To Fund	Due From Fund	Amount	Purpose
General Fund	Other Governmental Funds	\$ 40,114	Short-term loans
	Total	<u>\$ 40,114</u>	

All amounts due are scheduled to be repaid within one year.

SNOOK INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

2. Transfers To and From Other Funds

Transfers to and from other funds at August 31, 2017 consisted of the following:

Transfers From	Transfers To	Amount	Reason
General Fund	Food Service Fund	\$ 20,000	Supplement other funds sources
General Fund	Workers' Compensation Fund	28,159	Supplement other funds sources
Food Service Fund	Workers' Compensation Fund	6,574	Supplement other funds sources
	Total	<u>\$ 54,733</u>	

F. Long-Term Obligations

1. Long-Term Obligation Activity

Long-term obligations include debt and other long-term liabilities. Changes in long-term obligations for the year ended August 31, 2017 are as follows:

	Beginning Balance	Increase	Decrease	Ending Balance	Amounts Due Within One Year
<u>Governmental activities:</u>					
Building Bonds, Series 2008	\$ 235,000	\$ --	\$ (235,000)	\$ --	\$ --
Refunding Bonds, Series 2015	7,745,000	--	(30,000)	7,715,000	260,000
SECO Loan	239,920	--	(29,771)	210,149	29,845
Total	<u>\$ 8,219,920</u>	<u>\$ --</u>	<u>\$ (294,771)</u>	<u>\$ 7,925,149*</u>	<u>\$ 289,845</u>
<u>Other liabilities:</u>					
Net issuance of premiums (discounts)	\$ 489,763	\$ --	\$ (19,591)	470,173	*
Net pension liability	950,596	55,210	--	1,005,806	--
Total governmental activities	<u>\$ 9,660,279</u>	<u>\$ 55,210</u>	<u>\$ (114,362)</u>	<u>\$ 9,401,128</u>	<u>\$ 289,845</u>
				Long-term liabilities due in more than one year	<u>\$ 9,111,283</u>
				*Debt associated with capital assets	<u>\$ 8,395,322</u>

Long-term liabilities applicable to the District's governmental activities are not due and payable in the current period and, accordingly, are not reported as fund liabilities in the governmental funds. Interest on long-term debt is not accrued in the governmental funds, but rather is recognized as an expenditure when due.

Current requirements for principal and interest expenditures are accounted for in the Debt Service Fund and General Fund. These were issued as school building bonds, refunding bonds, and a loan agreement. The interest rates are 2.5% to 4.00% on the bonds and 0.25% on the loan. Interest expense was \$264,349 for year ended August 31, 2017.

SNOOK INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

2. Debt Service Requirements

Debt service requirements on long-term debt at August 31, 2017 are as follows:

<u>Year Ending August 31.</u>	<u>Total Bonds</u>		
	<u>Principal</u>	<u>Interest</u>	<u>Total</u>
2018	\$ 260,000	\$ 255,050	\$ 515,050
2019	270,000	244,450	514,450
2020	275,000	233,550	508,550
2021	290,000	222,250	512,250
2022	300,000	210,450	510,450
2023-2027	1,670,000	870,475	2,540,475
2028-2032	1,960,000	611,775	2,571,775
2033-2037	2,360,000	290,350	2,650,350
2038-2042	330,000	9,275	339,275
Totals	<u>\$ 7,715,000</u>	<u>\$ 2,947,625</u>	<u>\$ 10,662,625</u>

<u>Year Ending August 31.</u>	<u>Total Loan</u>		
	<u>Principal</u>	<u>Interest</u>	<u>Total</u>
2018	\$ 29,845	\$ 498	\$ 30,344
2019	29,920	424	30,344
2020	29,995	349	30,344
2021	30,070	274	30,344
2022	30,145	198	30,344
2023-2027	60,173	170	60,343
Totals	<u>\$ 210,149</u>	<u>\$ 1,913</u>	<u>\$ 212,062</u>

G. Commitments Under Noncapitalized Leases

The District has various operating lease agreements for copiers. Rent expenditures recognized by the District are \$79,631.

H. Oil and Gas Lease Agreements

On August 12, 2013, the District entered into a 36-month lease agreement with Petromax Brazos, LLC for purposes of exploring, drilling, and operating for producing and owning oil, gas, and other minerals of District-owned property. The District will receive royalties of 25% of the production of oil, gas, and other substances. During the year, the District received \$6,958 for the lease of these mineral rights.

I. Risk Management

The District is exposed to various risks of loss related to torts; theft of, damage to, or destruction of assets; errors and omissions; injuries to employees; and natural disasters. During fiscal year 2017, the District purchased commercial insurance to cover general liabilities. There were no significant reductions in coverage in the past fiscal year and there were no settlements exceeding insurance coverage for each of the past three fiscal years.

SNOOK INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

J. Pension Plan

1. Plan Description

The District participates in a cost-sharing multiple-employer defined benefit pension that has a special funding situation. The plan is administered by the Teacher Retirement System of Texas (TRS). It is a defined benefit pension plan established and administered in accordance with the Texas Constitution, Article XVI, Section 67, and Texas Government Code, Title 8, Subtitle C. The pension trust fund is a qualified pension trust under section 401(a) of the Internal Revenue Code. The Texas Legislature establishes benefits and contribution rates within the guidelines of the Texas Constitution. The pension's Board of Trustees does not have the authority to establish or amend benefit terms.

All employees of public, state-supported educational institutions in Texas who are employed for one-half or more of the standard work load and who are not exempted from membership under Texas Government Code, Title 8, Section 822.002 are covered by the system.

2. Pension Plan Fiduciary Net Position

Detailed information about TRS' fiduciary net position is available in a separately issued Comprehensive Annual Financial Report that includes financial statements and required supplementary information. That report may be obtained on the Internet at <https://www.trs.tx.us/aboutDocuments/caf.pdf#CAFR>; by writing to TRS at 1000 Red River Street, Austin, TX, 78701-2698; or by calling (512) 542-6592.

3. Benefits Provided

TRS provides service and disability retirement, as well as death and survivor benefits, to eligible employees (and their beneficiaries) of public and higher education in Texas. The pension formula is calculated using 2.3% (multiplier) times the average of the 5 highest annual creditable salaries times years of credited service to arrive at the annual standard annuity except for members who are grandfathered, the 3 highest annual salaries are used. The normal service retirement is at age 65 with 5 years of credited service or when the sum of the member's age and years of credited service equals 80 or more years. Early retirement is at age 55 with 5 years of service credit or earlier than 55 with 30 years of service credit. There are additional provisions for early retirement if the sum of the member's age and years of service credit total at least 80, but the member is less than age 60 or 62 depending on date of employment, or if the member was grandfathered in under a previous rule.

There are no automatic post-employment benefit changes, including automatic cost of living adjustments (COLAs). Ad hoc post-employment benefit changes, including ad hoc COLAs, can be granted by the Texas Legislature as noted in the Plan description in (1.) above.

4. Contributions

Contribution requirements are established or amended pursuant to Article 16, Section 67 of the Texas Constitution which requires the Texas legislature to establish a member contribution rate of not less than 6% of the member's annual compensation and a state contribution rate of not less than 6% and not more than 10% of the aggregate annual compensation paid to members of the system during the fiscal year. Texas Government Code section 821.006 prohibits benefit improvements if, as a result of the particular action, the time required to amortize TRS' unfunded actuarial liabilities would be increased to a period that exceeds 31 years, or, if the amortization period already exceeds 31 years, the period would be increased by such action.

Employee contribution rates are set in state statute, Texas Government Code 825.402. Senate Bill 1458 of the 83rd Texas Legislature amended Texas Government Code 825.402 for member contributions and established employee contribution rates for fiscal years 2014 through 2017. The 83rd Texas Legislature, General Appropriations Act (GAA) established the employer contribution rates for fiscal years 2014 and 2015. The 84th Texas Legislature, General Appropriations Act (GAA) established the employer contribution rates for fiscal years 2016 and 2017.

SNOOK INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

	<u>Contribution Rates</u>	
	2016	2017
Member	7.2%	7.7%
Non-Employer Contributing Entity (NECE - State)	6.8%	6.8%
Employers	6.8%	6.8%
District's 2017 Employer Contributions	\$ 84,568	
District's 2017 Member Contributions	\$ 78,351	
NECE 2017 On-Behalf Contributions to District	\$ 212,364	

Contributors to the plan include members, employers, and the State of Texas as the only non-employer contributing entity. The State is the employer for senior colleges, medical schools, and state agencies including TRS. In each respective role, the State contributes to the plan in accordance with state statutes and the General Appropriations Act (GAA).

As the non-employer contributing entity for public education and junior colleges, the State of Texas contributes to the retirement system an amount equal to the current employer contribution rate times the aggregate annual compensation of all participating members of the pension trust fund during that fiscal year reduced by the amounts described below which are paid by the employers. Employers (public school, junior college, other entities, or the State of Texas as the employer for senior universities and medical schools) are required to pay the employer contribution rate in the following instances:

- On the portion of the member's salary that exceeds the statutory minimum for members entitled to the statutory minimum under Section 21.402 of the Texas Education Code.
- During a new member's first 90 days of employment.
- When any part or all of an employee's salary is paid by federal funding sources, a privately sponsored source, from non-educational, and general or local funds.
- When the employing district is a public junior college or junior college district, the employer shall contribute to the retirement system an amount equal to 50% of the state contribution rate for certain instructional or administrative employees and 100% of the state contribution rate for all other employees.

In addition to the employer contributions listed above, there are two additional surcharges an employer is subject to:

- When employing a retiree of TRS, the employer shall pay both the member contribution and the state contribution as an employment after retirement surcharge.
- When a school district or charter school does not contribute to the Federal Old-Age, Survivors, and Disability Insurance (OASDI) Program for certain employees, they must contribute 1.5% of the state contribution rate for certain instructional or administrative employees and 100% of the state contribution rate for all other employees.

SNOOK INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

5. Actuarial Assumptions

The total pension liability in the August 31, 2016 actuarial valuation was determined using the following actuarial assumptions:

Valuation Date	August 31, 2016
Actuarial Cost Method	Individual Entry Age Normal
Asset Valuation Method	Market Value
Single Discount Rate	8%
Long-term Expected Investment Rate of Return	8%
Inflation	2.5%
Salary Increases including Inflation	3.5% to 9.5%
Payroll Growth Rate	2.5%
Benefit Changes During the Year	None
Ad hoc Post-Employment Benefit Changes	None

The actuarial methods and assumptions are based primarily on a study of actual experience for the four-year period ending August 31, 2014 and adopted on September 24, 2015.

6. Discount Rate

The discount rate used to measure the total pension liability was 8%. There was no change in the discount rate since the previous year. The projection of cash flows used to determine the discount rate assumed that contributions from plan members and those of the contributing employers and the non-employer contributing entity are made at the statutorily required rates. Based on those assumptions, the pension plan's fiduciary net position was projected to be available to make all future benefit payments of current plan members. Therefore, the long-term expected rate of return on pension plan investments was applied to all periods of projected benefit payments to determine the total pension liability.

The long-term rate of return on pension plan investments is 8%. The long-term expected rate of return on pension plan investments was determined using a building block method in which best-estimates ranges of expected future real rates of return (expected returns, net of pension plan investment expense and inflation) are developed for each major asset class. These ranges are combined to produce the long-term expected rate of return by weighting the expected future real rates of return by the target asset allocation percentage and by adding expected inflation.

SNOOK INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

Best estimates of geometric real rates of return for each major asset class included in the System's target asset allocation as of August 31, 2016 are summarized below:

Teacher Retirement System of Texas			
Asset Allocation and Long-Term Expected Real Rate of Return			
As of August 31, 2016			
Asset Class	Target Allocation	Long-term Expected Geometric Real Rate of Return	Expected Contribution to Long-term Portfolio Returns*
Global Equity			
U.S.	18%	4.6%	1.0%
Non-U.S. Developed	13%	5.1%	0.8%
Emerging Markets	9%	5.9%	0.7%
Directional Hedge Funds	4%	3.2%	0.1%
Private Equity	13%	7.0%	1.1%
Stable Value			
U.S. Treasuries	11%	0.7%	0.1%
Absolute Return	-	1.8%	-
Hedge Funds (Stable Value)	4%	3.0%	0.1%
Cash	1%	-0.2%	-
Real Return			
Global Inflation Linked Bonds	3%	0.9%	-
Real Assets	16%	5.1%	1.1%
Energy & Natural Resources	3%	6.6%	0.2%
Commodities	-	1.2%	-
Risk Parity			
Risk Parity	5%	6.7%	0.3%
Inflation Expectation	-	-	2.2%
Alpha	-	-	1.0%
Total	100%		8.7%

* The expected contribution to returns incorporates the volatility drag resulting from the conversion between arithmetic and geometric mean returns.

7. Discount Rate Sensitivity Analysis

The following schedule shows the impact of the net pension liability if the discount rate used was 1% less than and 1% greater than the discount rate that was used (8%) in measuring the 2016 net pension liability.

	1% Decrease in Discount Rate 7%	Discount Rate 8%	1% Increase in Discount Rate 9%
District's proportionate share of the net pension liability	\$ 1,556,648	\$ 1,005,806	\$ 538,580

SNOOK INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

8. Pension Liabilities, Pension Expense, and Deferred Outflows/Inflows of Resources Related to Pensions

At August 31, 2017, the District reported a liability of \$1,005,806 for its proportionate share of TRS' net pension liability. This liability reflects a reduction for State pension support provided to the District. The amount recognized by the District as its proportionate share of the net pension liability, the related State support, and the total portion of the net pension liability that was associated with the District were as follows:

District's proportionate share of the collective net pension liability	\$ 1,005,806
State's proportionate share that is associated with District	<u>2,520,728</u>
Total	<u>\$ 3,526,534</u>

The net pension liability was measured as of August 31, 2016 and the total pension liability used to calculate the net pension liability was determined by an actuarial valuation as of that date. The District's proportion of the net pension liability was based on the District's contributions to the pension plan relative to the contributions of all employers to the plan for the period September 1, 2015 through August 31, 2016.

At August 31, 2016, the District's proportion of the collective net pension liability was 0.0026617%, which was a decrease of 0.0000265% from its proportion measured as of August 31, 2015.

Changes Since the Prior Actuarial Valuation - There were no changes to the actuarial assumptions or other inputs that affected measurement of the total pension liability since the prior measurement period:

There were no changes of benefit terms that affected measurement of the total pension liability during the measurement period.

For the year ended August 31, 2017, the District recognized pension expense of \$261,591 and revenue of \$261,591 for support provided by the State.

At August 31, 2017, the District reported its proportionate share of TRS' deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources related to pensions from the following sources:

	Deferred Outflows of Resources	Deferred Inflows of Resources
Differences between expected and actual economic experience	\$ 15,771	\$ 30,033
Changes in actuarial assumptions	30,655	27,880
Difference between projected and actual investment earnings	85,169	-
Changes in proportion and difference between the District's contributions and the proportionate share of contributions	250,461	73
Contributions paid to TRS subsequent to the measurement date	<u>87,198</u>	<u>-</u>
Total	<u>\$ 469,254</u>	<u>\$ 57,986</u>

SNOOK INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

The net amounts of the District's balances of deferred outflows and inflows of resources related to pensions will be recognized in pension expense as follows:

Year Ended August 31	Pension Expense
2018	\$ 57,900
2019	57,900
2020	112,225
2021	53,725
2022	36,548
Thereafter	5,772
Total	<u>\$ 324,070</u>

K. Retiree Health Care Plans

1. TRS-Care

a. Plan Description

The District contributes to the Texas Public School Retired Employees Group Insurance Program (TRS-Care), a cost-sharing multiple-employer defined benefit postemployment health care plan administered by TRS. TRS-Care provides health care coverage for certain persons (and their dependents) who retired under TRS. The statutory authority for the program is Texas Insurance Code, Chapter 1575. Section 1575.052 grants the TRS Board of Trustees the authority to establish and amend basic and optional group insurance coverage for participants. TRS issues a publicly available financial report that includes financial statements and required supplementary information for TRS-Care. That report may be obtained by visiting the TRS website at www.trs.state.tx.us under the TRS Publications heading; by writing to the Communications Department of TRS at 1000 Red River Street, Austin, Texas 78701; or by calling the TRS Communications Department at 1-800-223-8778.

b. Funding Policy

Contribution requirements are not actuarially determined but are legally established each biennium by the Texas Legislature. Texas Insurance Code, Sections 1575.202, 203, and 204 establish state, active employee, and public school contributions, respectively. Funding for free basic coverage is provided by the program based upon public school district payroll. Per Texas Insurance Code, Chapter 1575, the public school contribution may not be less than 0.25% or greater than 0.75% of the salary of each active employee of the public school. Funding for optional coverage is provided by those participants selecting the optional coverage. The State of Texas contribution rate was 1% for fiscal years 2017, 2016, and 2015. The active public school employee contributions rates were 0.65% of public school payroll, with school districts contributing a percentage of payroll set at 0.55% for fiscal years 2017, 2016, and 2015. For the years ended August 31, 2017, 2016, and 2015, the State's contributions to TRS-Care were \$1,514, \$1,700, and \$1,877, respectively; the active member contributions were \$23,426, \$23,138, and \$21,542, respectively; and the District's contributions were \$19,822, \$19,578, and \$18,228, respectively; which equaled the required contributions each year.

2. Medicare Part D Subsidies

The Medicare Prescription Drug, Improvement, and Modernization Act of 2003, which was effective January 1, 2006, established prescription drug coverage for Medicare beneficiaries known as Medicare Part D. One of the provisions of Medicare Part D allows for TRS-Care to receive retiree drug subsidy payments from the federal government to offset certain prescription drug expenditures for eligible TRS-Care participants. For the fiscal years ended August 31, 2017, 2016, and 2015, the subsidy payments received by TRS-Care on behalf of the District were \$10,638, \$13,772, and \$13,393, respectively.

SNOOK INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

L. Employee Health Care Coverage

During the year ended August 31, 2017, employees of the District were covered by a health insurance plan (the "Plan"). The District paid premiums of \$250 per pay period per employee to the Plan. Employees, at their option, authorized payroll withholdings to pay premiums for dependents. All premiums were paid to a third-party administrator, acting on behalf of the self-funded pool. The Plan was authorized by Article 3.51-2, Texas Insurance Code and was documented by contractual agreement.

The contract between the District and the third-party administrator is renewable September 1, 2017, and terms of coverage and premium costs are included in the contractual provisions. Other Districts and/or their employees contributed to the self-insurance pool which was operated under contractual provisions of Article 4413(32c), Interlocal Cooperation Act.

M. Commitments and Contingencies

1. Contingencies

The District participates in grant programs which are governed by various rules and regulations of the grantor agencies. Costs charged to the respective grant programs are subject to audit and adjustment by the grantor agencies; therefore, to the extent that the District has not complied with the rules and regulations governing the grants, refunds of any money received may be required and the collectibility of any related receivable may be impaired. In the opinion of the District, there are no significant contingent liabilities relating to compliance with the rules and regulations governing the respective grants; therefore, no provision has been recorded in the accompanying basic financial statements for such contingencies.

2. Litigation

No reportable litigation was pending against the District at August 31, 2017.

N. Shared Services Arrangements

The District participates in a shared services arrangement (SSA) for the education of migratory students funded under Title I, Part C, Migrant Education program. The District neither has a joint ownership interest in fixed assets purchased by the fiscal agent, Education Service Center - Region VI, nor does the District have a net equity interest in the fiscal agent. The fiscal agent is neither accumulating significant financial resources nor fiscal exigencies that would give rise to a future beneficial or burden to the District. The fiscal agent is responsible for part of the financial activities of the SSA.

The District participates in an SSA for the education of career and technology students, funded under Title II, Basic Grant Career and Technology Education Program. The District neither has a joint ownership interest in fixed assets purchased by the fiscal agent, Education Service Center - Region VI, nor does the District have a net equity interest in the fiscal agent. The fiscal agent is neither accumulating significant financial resources nor fiscal exigencies that would give rise to a future beneficial or burden to the District. The fiscal agent is responsible for part of the financial activities of the SSA.

The District participates in an SSA for the improvement of the education of limited English proficient children funded under the ESEA Title III, Part A, English Language Acquisition and Language Enhancement. The District neither has joint ownership interest in fixed assets purchased by the fiscal agent, Education Service Center - Region VI, nor does the District have a net equity interest in the fiscal agent. The fiscal agent is neither accumulating significant financial resources nor fiscal exigencies that would give rise to a future additional benefit or burden to the District. The fiscal agent is responsible for part of the financial activities of the SSA.

SNOOK INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

The District participates in the Bureson-Milam Special Services Cooperative which is an SSA for resource education services. This SSA includes nine participating independent school districts with the Rockdale Independent School District acting as fiscal agent for the SSA. Financial transactions of the SSA are accounted for in accordance with Model 3 of the SSA section of the Texas Education Agency's *Financial Accountability System Resource Guide*. This SSA is funded partially through State and local funds and partially through Federal programs.

The individual programs and the District's participation in each which were included in this SSA are as follows:

Program	CFDA Number	District Value
State and Local	N/A	\$ 37,095
IDEA-B Formula	84.027	118,304
IDEA-B Preschool	84.173	1,071
	Total	\$ <u>156,470</u>

The expenditures under the above programs were classified as follows:

Classification	Amount
6100 - Payroll Costs	\$ 112,461
6200 - Contracted Services	31,379
6300 - Supplies and Materials	7,668
6400 - Other Operating Costs	4,962
	\$ <u>156,470</u>

O. Unemployment Compensation

During the year ended August 31, 2017, the District provided unemployment compensation coverage to its employees through participation in the TASB Risk Management Fund (the "Fund"). The Fund was created and is operated under the provisions of the Interlocal Cooperation Act, Chapter 791 of the Texas Government Code. The Fund's Unemployment Compensation Program is authorized by Section 22.005 of the Texas Education Code and Chapter 172 of the Texas Local Government Code. All members participating in the Fund execute interlocal agreements that define the responsibilities of the parties.

The Fund meets its quarterly obligation to the Texas Workforce Commission. Expenses are accrued monthly until the quarterly payment has been made. Expenses can be reasonably estimated; therefore, there is no need for specific or aggregate stop loss coverage for the unemployment compensation pool.

The Fund engages the services of an independent auditor to conduct a financial audit after the close of each plan year on August 31. The audit is accepted by the Fund's Board of Trustees in February of the following year. The Fund's audited financial statements as of August 31, 2016 are available on the TASB Risk Management Fund website and have been filed with the Texas Department of Insurance in Austin.

P. Workers' Compensation

During the year ended August 31, 2017, employees of the District were covered by a Workers' Compensation Plan (the "Plan"). The Plan was authorized by Section 21.922, Texas Education Code and was documented by contractual agreements.

The contract between the District and the third-party administrator, Creative Risk Funding (CRF), acting on behalf of the self-funded pool, is renewable September 1 and terms, as well as costs of average, are included in contractual provisions.

SNOOK INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

In accordance with state statutes, the District was protected against unanticipated catastrophic individual or aggregate loss by reinsurance coverage carried through Safety National Corporation, a commercial insurer licensed or eligible to do business in the State of Texas in accordance with the Texas Insurance Code. The specific retention is \$350,000 and the aggregate limit is \$1,000,000. The aggregate stop-loss coverage is \$5,000,000. According to CRF, the unfunded benefit obligation included \$18,186 in claims that were unpaid and \$15,291 in estimated claims incurred, but not reported. Other school districts contributed to the self-funded pool, which was operated under the contractual provisions of Article 4413(32c), Interlocal Cooperation Act.

	Fiscal Year	
	2017	2016
Claims liability at beginning of year	\$ 13,263	\$ -
Current year claims and estimated changes	10,034	17,485
Claims payments	(5,111)	(4,222)
Claims liability at year end	<u>\$ 18,186</u>	<u>\$ 13,268</u>

This page is left blank intentionally.

Required Supplementary Information

Required supplementary information includes financial information and disclosures required by the Governmental Accounting Standards Board but not considered a part of the basic financial statements.

SNOOK INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

GENERAL FUND
 BUDGETARY COMPARISON SCHEDULE
 FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

EXHIBIT G-1
 Page 1 of 2

Data Control Codes		1	2	3	Variance with Final Budget Positive (Negative)
		Budgeted Amounts		Actual	
		Original	Final		
REVENUES:					
5700	Local and Intermediate Sources	\$ 2,694,000	\$ 2,694,000	\$ 2,667,781	\$ (26,219)
5800	State Program Revenues	2,196,269	2,196,269	2,412,106	215,837
5900	Federal Program Revenues	--	--	17,914	17,914
5020	Total Revenues	<u>4,890,269</u>	<u>4,890,269</u>	<u>5,097,801</u>	<u>207,532</u>
EXPENDITURES:					
Current:					
Instruction & Instructional Related Services:					
0011	Instruction	2,526,174	2,496,174	2,459,754	36,420
0012	Instructional Resources and Media Services	10,350	13,350	10,224	3,126
0013	Curriculum and Staff Development	144,702	134,702	115,651	19,051
	Total Instruction & Instr. Related Services	<u>2,681,226</u>	<u>2,644,226</u>	<u>2,585,629</u>	<u>58,597</u>
Instructional and School Leadership:					
0021	Instructional Leadership	15,800	15,800	10,795	5,005
0023	School Leadership	420,627	425,627	416,758	8,869
	Total Instructional & School Leadership	<u>436,427</u>	<u>441,427</u>	<u>427,553</u>	<u>13,874</u>
Support Services - Student (Pupil):					
0031	Guidance, Counseling and Evaluation Services	146,162	146,162	141,203	4,959
0033	Health Services	60,175	62,175	57,933	4,242
0034	Student (Pupil) Transportation	217,405	213,305	197,232	16,073
0036	Cocurricular/Extracurricular Activities	429,172	429,172	424,843	4,329
	Total Support Services - Student (Pupil)	<u>852,914</u>	<u>850,814</u>	<u>821,211</u>	<u>29,603</u>
Administrative Support Services:					
0041	General Administration	454,734	449,734	433,043	16,691
	Total Administrative Support Services	<u>454,734</u>	<u>449,734</u>	<u>433,043</u>	<u>16,691</u>
Support Services - Nonstudent Based:					
0051	Plant Maintenance and Operations	616,880	636,880	623,219	13,661
0052	Security and Monitoring Services	12,500	17,700	14,523	3,177
0053	Data Processing Services	161,576	171,576	161,205	10,371
	Total Support Services - Nonstudent Based	<u>790,956</u>	<u>826,156</u>	<u>798,947</u>	<u>27,209</u>
Debt Service:					
0071	Principal on Long-Term Debt	30,500	32,900	29,771	3,129
0072	Interest on Long-Term Debt	--	600	573	27
	Total Debt Service	<u>30,500</u>	<u>33,500</u>	<u>30,344</u>	<u>3,156</u>
Capital Outlay:					
0081	Capital Outlay	--	9,900	4,813	5,087
	Total Capital Outlay	<u>--</u>	<u>9,900</u>	<u>4,813</u>	<u>5,087</u>
Intergovernmental Charges:					
0093	Payments to Fiscal Agent/Member Dist.-SSA	45,000	47,000	43,137	3,863
0099	Other Intergovernmental Charges	128,000	117,000	110,358	6,642
	Total Intergovernmental Charges	<u>173,000</u>	<u>164,000</u>	<u>153,495</u>	<u>10,505</u>
6030	Total Expenditures	<u>5,419,757</u>	<u>5,419,757</u>	<u>5,255,035</u>	<u>164,722</u>

SNOOK INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

GENERAL FUND
 BUDGETARY COMPARISON SCHEDULE
 FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

EXHIBIT G-1

Page 2 of 2

Data Control Codes		1	2	3	Variance with Final Budget Positive (Negative)
		Budgeted Amounts		Actual	
		Original	Final		
1100	Excess (Deficiency) of Revenues Over (Under)				
1100	Expenditures	<u>(529,488)</u>	<u>(529,488)</u>	<u>(157,234)</u>	<u>372,254</u>
	Other Financing Sources (Uses):				
8911	Transfers Out	<u>(51,342)</u>	<u>(51,342)</u>	<u>(48,159)</u>	<u>3,183</u>
7080	Total Other Financing Sources and (Uses)	<u>(51,342)</u>	<u>(51,342)</u>	<u>(48,159)</u>	<u>3,183</u>
	SPECIAL ITEM:				
7918	Special Item (Resource)	<u>6,000</u>	<u>6,000</u>	<u>6,958</u>	<u>958</u>
1200	Net Change in Fund Balance	<u>(574,830)</u>	<u>(574,830)</u>	<u>(198,435)</u>	<u>376,395</u>
0100	Fund Balance - Beginning	<u>1,447,668</u>	<u>1,447,668</u>	<u>1,447,668</u>	<u>--</u>
3000	Fund Balance - Ending	<u>\$ 872,838</u>	<u>\$ 872,838</u>	<u>\$ 1,249,233</u>	<u>\$ 376,395</u>

Notes to Required Supplementary Information:

1. Annual budgets are adopted on a basis consistent with generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP).

This page is left blank intentionally.

SNOOK INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

EXHIBIT G-2

*SCHEDULE OF THE DISTRICT'S PROPORTIONATE
SHARE OF THE NET PENSION LIABILITY
TEACHER RETIREMENT SYSTEM OF TEXAS (TRS)
FOR THE YEAR ENDING AUGUST 31, 2017*

	Measurement Year*		
	2016	2015	2014
District's proportion of the net pension liability (asset)	0.0026617%	0.0026882%	0.015517%
District's proportionate share of the net pension liability (asset)	\$ 1,005,806	\$ 950,596	\$ 414,480
State's proportionate share of the net pension liability (asset) associated with the District	2,520,728	2,331,263	2,002,217
Total	\$ 3,526,534	\$ 3,281,859	\$ 2,416,697
District's covered employee payroll**	\$ 3,559,693	\$ 3,314,096	\$ 3,240,703
District's proportionate share of the net pension liability (asset) as a percentage of its covered employee payroll	28.26%	28.68%	12.79%
Plan fiduciary net position as a percentage of the total pension liability	78.00%	78.43%	83.25%

* Only three years' worth of information is currently available.

** As of the measurement date.

Notes to Required Supplementary Information:

Changes of Assumptions

There were no changes in assumptions or other inputs that affected measurement of the total net pension liability since the prior measurement period.

Changes of Benefits:

There were no changes of benefit terms that affected measurement of the total pension liability during the measurement period.

SNOOK INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

SCHEDULE OF DISTRICT CONTRIBUTIONS

TEACHER RETIREMENT SYSTEM OF TEXAS (TRS)

LAST TEN FISCAL YEARS

FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

	Fiscal Year				
	2017	2016	2015	2014	2013
Contractually required contribution	\$ 87,198	\$ 84,724	\$ 79,688	\$ 39,341	\$ 30,554
Contributions in relation to the contractually required contribution	87,198	84,724	79,688	39,341	30,554
Contribution deficiency (excess)	<u>\$ --</u>	<u>\$ --</u>	<u>\$ --</u>	<u>\$ --</u>	<u>\$ --</u>
District's covered employee payroll	\$ 3,603,965	\$ 3,559,693	\$ 3,314,096	\$ 3,240,703	\$ 3,286,853
Contributions as a percentage of covered employee payroll	2.42%	2.38%	2.40%	1.21%	0.93%

EXHIBIT G-3

		Fiscal Year				
		2012	2011	2010	2009	2008
\$	33,556	\$ 40,815	\$ 40,124	\$ 39,036	\$ 33,739	
	33,556	40,815	40,124	39,036	33,739	
\$	--	\$ --	\$ --	\$ --	\$ --	
\$	3,192,287	\$ 3,374,817	\$ 3,336,879	\$ 3,440,121	\$ 3,349,716	
	1.05%	1.21%	1.20%	1.13%	1.01%	

This page is left blank intentionally.

Combining Statements as Supplementary Information

This supplementary information includes financial statements and schedules not required by the Governmental Accounting Standards Board, nor a part of the basic financial statements, but are presented for purposes of additional analysis.

SNOOK INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

COMBINING BALANCE SHEET

NONMAJOR GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS

AUGUST 31, 2017

Data Control Codes	Special Revenue Funds	Capital Projects Fund	Permanent Fund	Total Nonmajor Governmental Funds(See Exhibit C-1)	
ASSETS:					
1110	Cash and Cash Equivalents	\$ 63,938	\$ 24,574	\$ --	\$ 88,512
1120	Current Investments	--	1,009	127,065	128,074
1240	Due from Other Governments	51,306	--	--	51,306
1000	Total Assets	<u>115,244</u>	<u>25,583</u>	<u>127,065</u>	<u>267,892</u>
LIABILITIES:					
Current Liabilities:					
2110	Accounts Payable	\$ 14,853	\$ --	\$ --	\$ 14,853
2160	Accrued Wages Payable	10,164	--	--	10,164
2170	Due to Other Funds	40,114	--	--	40,114
2180	Due to Other Governments	892	--	--	892
2200	Accrued Expenditures	559	--	--	559
2300	Deferred Revenue	1,550	--	--	1,550
2000	Total Liabilities	<u>68,132</u>	<u>--</u>	<u>--</u>	<u>68,132</u>
FUND BALANCES:					
Restricted Fund Balances:					
3450	Federal/State Funds Grant Restrictions	41,214	--	--	41,214
3470	Capital Acquisitions & Contractual Obligations	--	44	--	44
3490	Other Restrictions of Fund Balance	5,898	--	127,065	132,963
Assigned Fund Balances:					
3550	Construction	--	25,539	--	25,539
3000	Total Fund Balances	<u>47,112</u>	<u>25,583</u>	<u>127,065</u>	<u>199,760</u>
4000	Total Liabilities and Fund Balances	<u>\$ 115,244</u>	<u>\$ 25,583</u>	<u>\$ 127,065</u>	<u>\$ 267,892</u>

SNOOK INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
 COMBINING STATEMENT OF REVENUES, EXPENDITURES,
 AND CHANGES IN FUND BALANCES
 NONMAJOR GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS
 FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

Data Control Codes	Special Revenue Funds	Capital Projects Fund	Permanent Fund	Total Nonmajor Governmental Funds(See Exhibit C-2)
REVENUES:				
5700 <i>Local and Intermediate Sources</i>	\$ 53,355	\$ 44	\$ 1,448	\$ 54,847
5800 <i>State Program Revenues</i>	44,936	--	--	44,936
5900 <i>Federal Program Revenues</i>	501,280	--	--	501,280
5020 <i>Total Revenues</i>	<u>599,571</u>	<u>44</u>	<u>1,448</u>	<u>601,063</u>
EXPENDITURES:				
Current:				
0011 <i>Instruction</i>	199,273	--	--	199,273
0012 <i>Instructional Resources and Media Services</i>	27,954	--	--	27,954
0013 <i>Curriculum and Staff Development</i>	65,883	--	--	65,883
0023 <i>School Leadership</i>	2,320	--	--	2,320
0035 <i>Food Service</i>	301,639	--	--	301,639
0041 <i>General Administration</i>	--	--	1,149	1,149
0061 <i>Community Services</i>	5,718	--	--	5,718
6030 <i>Total Expenditures</i>	<u>602,787</u>	<u>--</u>	<u>1,149</u>	<u>603,936</u>
1100 <i>Excess (Deficiency) of Revenues Over (Under)</i>				
1100 <i>Expenditures</i>	<u>(3,216)</u>	<u>44</u>	<u>299</u>	<u>(2,873)</u>
Other Financing Sources and (Uses):				
7915 <i>Transfers In</i>	20,000	--	--	20,000
8911 <i>Transfers Out</i>	(6,574)	--	--	(6,574)
7080 <i>Total Other Financing Sources and (Uses)</i>	<u>13,426</u>	<u>--</u>	<u>--</u>	<u>13,426</u>
1200 <i>Net Change in Fund Balances</i>	10,210	44	299	10,553
0100 <i>Fund Balances - Beginning</i>	36,902	25,539	126,766	189,207
3000 <i>Fund Balances - Ending</i>	<u>\$ 47,112</u>	<u>\$ 25,583</u>	<u>\$ 127,065</u>	<u>\$ 199,760</u>

SNOOK INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

COMBINING BALANCE SHEET

NONMAJOR SPECIAL REVENUE FUNDS

AUGUST 31, 2017

Data Control Codes	211 ESEA Title I Improving Basic Programs	212 ESEA Title I, Part C Migrant Children	240 National School Breakfast/Lunch Program	255 ESEA Title II Training & Recruiting	
ASSETS:					
1110	Cash and Cash Equivalents	\$ --	\$ 1	\$ 59,979	\$ 981
1240	Due from Other Governments	32,395	--	1,797	1,808
1000	Total Assets	<u>\$ 32,395</u>	<u>\$ 1</u>	<u>\$ 61,776</u>	<u>\$ 2,789</u>
LIABILITIES:					
Current Liabilities:					
2110	Accounts Payable	758	1	13,750	180
2160	Accrued Wages Payable	4,361	--	5,803	--
2170	Due to Other Funds	26,834	--	--	2,609
2180	Due to Other Governments	--	--	892	--
2200	Accrued Expenditures	442	--	117	--
2300	Deferred Revenue	--	--	--	--
2000	Total Liabilities	<u>32,395</u>	<u>1</u>	<u>20,562</u>	<u>2,789</u>
FUND BALANCES:					
Restricted Fund Balances:					
3450	Federal/State Funds Grant Restrictions	--	--	41,214	--
3490	Other Restrictions of Fund Balance	--	--	--	--
3000	Total Fund Balances	<u>--</u>	<u>--</u>	<u>41,214</u>	<u>--</u>
4000	Total Liabilities and Fund Balances	<u>\$ 32,395</u>	<u>\$ 1</u>	<u>\$ 61,776</u>	<u>\$ 2,789</u>

280 Education for Homeless Children & Youth-ARRA	289 Texas Regional Collaborative	410 State Textbook Fund	429 State Funded Special Revenue Fund	486 4H Safety
\$ --	\$ 1,000	\$ 1,169	\$ 108	\$ --
1,697	--	--	13,609	--
<u>\$ 1,697</u>	<u>\$ 1,000</u>	<u>\$ 1,169</u>	<u>\$ 13,717</u>	<u>\$ --</u>
--	--	--	164	--
--	--	--	--	--
1,697	--	--	8,974	--
--	--	--	--	--
--	--	--	--	--
--	1,000	550	--	--
<u>1,697</u>	<u>1,000</u>	<u>550</u>	<u>9,138</u>	<u>--</u>
--	--	--	--	--
--	--	619	4,579	--
--	--	619	4,579	--
<u>\$ 1,697</u>	<u>\$ 1,000</u>	<u>\$ 1,169</u>	<u>\$ 13,717</u>	<u>\$ --</u>

This page is left blank intentionally.

SNOOK INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

COMBINING BALANCE SHEET

NONMAJOR SPECIAL REVENUE FUNDS

AUGUST 31, 2017

Data Control Codes	487 Theater Guild	488 CEFCO Elementary Grant	Total Nonmajor Special Revenue Funds(See Exhibit H-1)
ASSETS:			
1110	\$ 700	\$ --	\$ 63,938
1240	--	--	51,306
1000	<u>\$ 700</u>	<u>\$ --</u>	<u>\$ 115,244</u>
LIABILITIES:			
Current Liabilities:			
2110	--	--	14,853
2160	--	--	10,164
2170	--	--	40,114
2180	--	--	892
2200	--	--	559
2300	--	--	1,550
2000	<u>--</u>	<u>--</u>	<u>68,132</u>
FUND BALANCES:			
Restricted Fund Balances:			
3450	--	--	41,214
3490	700	--	5,898
3000	<u>700</u>	<u>--</u>	<u>47,112</u>
4000	<u>\$ 700</u>	<u>\$ --</u>	<u>\$ 115,244</u>

SNOOK INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
 COMBINING STATEMENT OF REVENUES, EXPENDITURES,
 AND CHANGES IN FUND BALANCES
 NONMAJOR SPECIAL REVENUE FUNDS
 FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

Data Control Codes	211 ESEA Title I Improving Basic Programs	212 ESEA Title I, Part C Migrant Children	240 National School Breakfast/Lunch Program	255 ESEA Title II Training & Recruiting
REVENUES:				
5700 <i>Local and Intermediate Sources</i>	\$ --	\$ --	\$ 53,355	\$ --
5800 <i>State Program Revenues</i>	--	--	10,498	--
5900 <i>Federal Program Revenues</i>	214,980	1,164	231,258	19,635
5020 <i>Total Revenues</i>	<u>214,980</u>	<u>1,164</u>	<u>295,111</u>	<u>19,635</u>
EXPENDITURES:				
Current:				
0011 <i>Instruction</i>	126,942	94	--	19,635
0012 <i>Instructional Resources and Media Services</i>	27,954	--	--	--
0013 <i>Curriculum and Staff Development</i>	57,764	1,070	--	--
0023 <i>School Leadership</i>	2,320	--	--	--
0035 <i>Food Service</i>	--	--	301,639	--
0061 <i>Community Services</i>	--	--	--	--
6030 <i>Total Expenditures</i>	<u>214,980</u>	<u>1,164</u>	<u>301,639</u>	<u>19,635</u>
1100 <i>Excess (Deficiency) of Revenues Over (Under)</i>				
1100 <i>Expenditures</i>	--	--	(6,528)	--
Other Financing Sources and (Uses):				
7915 <i>Transfers In</i>	--	--	20,000	--
8911 <i>Transfers Out</i>	--	--	(6,574)	--
7080 <i>Total Other Financing Sources and (Uses)</i>	--	--	13,426	--
1200 <i>Net Change in Fund Balances</i>	--	--	6,898	--
0100 <i>Fund Balances - Beginning</i>	--	--	34,316	--
3000 <i>Fund Balances - Ending</i>	<u>\$ --</u>	<u>\$ --</u>	<u>\$ 41,214</u>	<u>\$ --</u>

280 Education for Homeless Children & Youth-ARRA	289 Texas Regional Collaborative	410 State Textbook Fund	429 State Funded Special Revenue Fund	486 4H Safety
\$ --	\$ --	\$ --	\$ --	\$ --
--	--	5,160	29,278	--
33,743	500	--	--	--
<u>33,743</u>	<u>500</u>	<u>5,160</u>	<u>29,278</u>	<u>--</u>
20,976	500	5,160	24,699	625
--	--	--	--	--
7,049	--	--	--	--
--	--	--	--	--
--	--	--	--	--
5,718	--	--	--	--
<u>33,743</u>	<u>500</u>	<u>5,160</u>	<u>24,699</u>	<u>625</u>
--	--	--	4,579	(625)
--	--	--	--	--
--	--	--	--	--
--	--	--	4,579	(625)
--	--	619	--	625
<u>\$ --</u>	<u>\$ --</u>	<u>\$ 619</u>	<u>\$ 4,579</u>	<u>\$ --</u>

This page is left blank intentionally.

SNOOK INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
 COMBINING STATEMENT OF REVENUES, EXPENDITURES,
 AND CHANGES IN FUND BALANCES
 NONMAJOR SPECIAL REVENUE FUNDS
 FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

Data Control Codes	487 Theater Guild	488 CEFCO Elementary Grant	Total Nonmajor Special Revenue Funds(See Exhibit H-2)
REVENUES:			
5700 <i>Local and Intermediate Sources</i>	\$ --	\$ --	\$ 53,355
5800 <i>State Program Revenues</i>	--	--	44,936
5900 <i>Federal Program Revenues</i>	--	--	501,280
5020 <i>Total Revenues</i>	<u>--</u>	<u>--</u>	<u>599,571</u>
EXPENDITURES:			
Current:			
0011 <i>Instruction</i>	--	642	199,273
0012 <i>Instructional Resources and Media Services</i>	--	--	27,954
0013 <i>Curriculum and Staff Development</i>	--	--	65,883
0023 <i>School Leadership</i>	--	--	2,320
0035 <i>Food Service</i>	--	--	301,639
0061 <i>Community Services</i>	--	--	5,718
6030 <i>Total Expenditures</i>	<u>--</u>	<u>642</u>	<u>602,787</u>
1100 <i>Excess (Deficiency) of Revenues Over (Under)</i>			
1100 <i>Expenditures</i>	<u>--</u>	<u>(642)</u>	<u>(3,216)</u>
Other Financing Sources and (Uses):			
7915 <i>Transfers In</i>	--	--	20,000
8911 <i>Transfers Out</i>	--	--	(6,574)
7080 <i>Total Other Financing Sources and (Uses)</i>	<u>--</u>	<u>--</u>	<u>13,426</u>
1200 <i>Net Change in Fund Balances</i>	<u>--</u>	<u>(642)</u>	<u>10,210</u>
0100 <i>Fund Balances - Beginning</i>	700	642	36,902
3000 <i>Fund Balances - Ending</i>	<u>\$ 700</u>	<u>\$ --</u>	<u>\$ 47,112</u>

This page is left blank intentionally.

Other Supplementary Information

This section includes financial information and disclosures not required by the Governmental Accounting Standards Board and not considered a part of the basic financial statements. It may, however, include information which is required by other entities.

SNOOK INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

*SCHEDULE OF DELINQUENT TAXES RECEIVABLE
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017*

Year Ended August 31	1		2		3	
	Tax Rates				Assessed/Appraised Value For School Tax Purposes	
	Maintenance		Debt Service			
2008 and Prior Years	\$	Various	\$	Various	\$	Various
2009		1.04		.34		136,089,917
2010		1.04		.35		151,925,085
2011		1.04		.37		143,275,830
2012		1.04		.38		136,449,383
2013		1.04		.36		140,615,214
2014		1.04		.36		131,045,868
2015		1.04		.33		152,980,911
2016		1.04		.33		286,364,872
2017 (School Year Under Audit)		1.17		.20		220,766,788

1000 Totals

9000 - Portion of Row 1000 for Taxes Paid into Tax Increment Zone Under Chapter 311, Tax Code

EXHIBIT J-1

10 Beginning Balance 9/1/16	20 Current Year's Total Levy	31 Maintenance Collections	32 Debt Service Collections	40 Entire Year's Adjustments	50 Ending Balance 8/31/17
\$ 65,186	\$ --	\$ 1,435	\$ 369	\$ (2,641)	\$ 60,741
21,498	--	303	99	(68)	21,027
14,990	--	599	202	(69)	14,121
19,239	--	1,047	373	(60)	17,760
21,772	--	1,534	561	(255)	19,422
33,592	--	2,361	817	82	30,495
42,011	--	4,679	1,620	(100)	35,612
54,290	--	14,584	4,627	38	35,117
152,844	--	29,159	10,551	(14,216)	98,918
--	3,024,505	2,466,574	421,637	--	136,295
<u>\$ 425,422</u>	<u>\$ 3,024,505</u>	<u>\$ 2,522,274</u>	<u>\$ 440,854</u>	<u>\$ (17,290)</u>	<u>\$ 469,508</u>
\$ --	\$ --	\$ --	\$ --	\$ --	\$ --

SNOOK INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
NATIONALSCHOOLBREAKFASTANDLUNCHPROGRAM
BUDGETARY COMPARISON SCHEDULE
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

EXHIBIT J-2

Data Control Codes	1		2		3		Variance with Final Budget Positive (Negative)
	Budgeted Amounts				Actual		
	Original		Final				
REVENUES:							
5700	<i>Local and Intermediate Sources</i>	\$ 75,810	\$ 75,810	\$ 53,356	\$ (22,454)		
5800	<i>State Program Revenues</i>	10,528	10,528	10,498	(30)		
5900	<i>Federal Program Revenues</i>	233,000	233,000	231,258	(1,742)		
5020	Total Revenues	<u>319,338</u>	<u>319,338</u>	<u>295,112</u>	<u>(24,226)</u>		
EXPENDITURES:							
Current:							
Support Services - Student (Pupil):							
0035	<i>Food Services</i>	335,947	335,947	301,639	34,308		
	Total Support Services - Student (Pupil)	<u>335,947</u>	<u>335,947</u>	<u>301,639</u>	<u>34,308</u>		
6030	Total Expenditures	<u>335,947</u>	<u>335,947</u>	<u>301,639</u>	<u>34,308</u>		
1100	Excess (Deficiency) of Revenues Over (Under)						
1100	Expenditures	<u>(16,609)</u>	<u>(16,609)</u>	<u>(6,527)</u>	<u>10,082</u>		
Other Financing Sources (Uses):							
7915	<i>Transfers In</i>	23,183	23,183	20,000	(3,183)		
8911	<i>Transfers Out</i>	<u>(6,574)</u>	<u>(6,574)</u>	<u>(6,574)</u>	<u>--</u>		
7080	Total Other Financing Sources and (Uses)	<u>16,609</u>	<u>16,609</u>	<u>13,426</u>	<u>(3,183)</u>		
1200	Net Change in Fund Balance	--	--	6,899	6,899		
0100	Fund Balance - Beginning	<u>34,315</u>	<u>34,315</u>	<u>34,315</u>	<u>--</u>		
3000	Fund Balance - Ending	<u>\$ 34,315</u>	<u>\$ 34,315</u>	<u>\$ 41,214</u>	<u>\$ 6,899</u>		

SNOOK INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

EXHIBIT J-3

DEBT SERVICE FUND
 BUDGETARY COMPARISON SCHEDULE
 FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

Data Control Codes	1		2		3		Variance with Final Budget Positive (Negative)
	Budgeted Amounts				Actual		
	Original	Final					
REVENUES:							
5700	Local and Intermediate Sources	\$ 455,500	\$ 455,500	\$ 464,714	\$ 9,214		
5800	State Program Revenues	12,113	12,113	--	(12,113)		
5020	Total Revenues	<u>467,613</u>	<u>467,613</u>	<u>464,714</u>	<u>(2,899)</u>		
EXPENDITURES:							
Debt Service:							
0071	Principal on Long-Term Debt	533,000	275,000	265,000	10,000		
0072	Interest on Long-Term Debt	--	267,000	263,776	3,224		
0073	Bond Issuance Costs and Fees	--	1,000	450	550		
	Total Debt Service	<u>533,000</u>	<u>543,000</u>	<u>529,226</u>	<u>13,774</u>		
6030	Total Expenditures	<u>533,000</u>	<u>543,000</u>	<u>529,226</u>	<u>13,774</u>		
1100	Excess (Deficiency) of Revenues Over (Under)						
1100	Expenditures	<u>(65,387)</u>	<u>(75,387)</u>	<u>(64,512)</u>	<u>10,875</u>		
1200	Net Change in Fund Balance	<u>(65,387)</u>	<u>(75,387)</u>	<u>(64,512)</u>	<u>10,875</u>		
0100	Fund Balance - Beginning	577,088	577,088	557,088	(20,000)		
3000	Fund Balance - Ending	<u>\$ 511,701</u>	<u>\$ 501,701</u>	<u>\$ 492,576</u>	<u>\$ (9,125)</u>		

This page is left blank intentionally.



Independent Auditors' Report on Internal Control over Financial Reporting and on Compliance and Other Matters Based on an Audit of Financial Statements Performed In Accordance With *Government Auditing Standards*

To the Board of Trustees of
Snook Independent School District:

We have audited, in accordance with the auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America and the standards applicable to financial audits contained in *Government Auditing Standards* issued by the Comptroller General of the United States, the financial statements of the governmental activities, each major fund, and the aggregate remaining fund information of Snook Independent School District (the "District"), as of and for the year ended August 31, 2017, and the related notes to the financial statements, which collectively comprise the District's basic financial statements, and have issued our report thereon dated December 11, 2017.

Internal Control Over Financial Reporting

In planning and performing our audit of the financial statements, we considered the District's internal control over financial reporting (internal control) to determine the audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances for the purpose of expressing our opinions on the financial statements, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the District's internal control. Accordingly, we do not express an opinion on the effectiveness of the District's internal control.

A *deficiency in internal control* exists when the design or operation of a control does not allow management or employees, in the normal course of performing their assigned functions, to prevent, or detect and correct, misstatements on a timely basis. A *material weakness* is a deficiency, or a combination of deficiencies, in internal control, such that there is a reasonable possibility that a material misstatement of the entity's financial statements will not be prevented, or detected and corrected, on a timely basis. A *significant deficiency* is a deficiency, or a combination of deficiencies, in internal control that is less severe than a material weakness, yet important enough to merit attention by those charged with governance.

Our consideration of internal control was for the limited purpose described in the first paragraph of this section and was not designed to identify all deficiencies in internal control that might be material weaknesses or significant deficiencies. Given these limitations, during our audit we did not identify any deficiencies in internal control that we consider to be material weaknesses. However, material weaknesses may exist that have not been identified.

Compliance and Other Matters

As part of obtaining reasonable assurance about whether the District's financial statements are free from material misstatement, we performed tests of its compliance with certain provisions of laws, regulations, contracts, and grant agreements, noncompliance with which could have a direct and material effect on the determination of financial statement amounts. However, providing an opinion on compliance with those provisions was not an objective of our audit and, accordingly, we do not express such an opinion. The results of our tests disclosed no instances of noncompliance or other matters that are required to be reported under *Government Auditing Standards*.

Purpose of this Report

The purpose of this report is solely to describe the scope of our testing of internal control and compliance and the results of that testing, and not to provide an opinion on the effectiveness of the District's internal control or on compliance. This report is an integral part of an audit performed in accordance with *Government Auditing Standards* in considering the District's internal control and compliance. Accordingly, this communication is not suitable for any other purpose.

Respectfully submitted,

BELT HARRIS PECHACEK, LLLP

Belt Harris Pechacek, LLLP
Certified Public Accountants
Houston, Texas
December 11, 2017

SNOOK INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
SCHEDULE OF FINDINGS AND QUESTIONED COSTS
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

A. Summary of Auditors' Results

1. Financial Statements

Type of auditors' report issued: Unmodified

Internal control over financial reporting:

One or more material weaknesses identified? Yes No

One or more significant deficiencies identified that are not considered to be material weaknesses? Yes None Reported

Noncompliance material to financial statements noted? Yes No

B. Financial Statement Findings

NONE

C. Federal Award Findings and Questioned Costs

NONE

SNOOK INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
SUMMARY SCHEDULE OF PRIOR AUDIT FINDINGS
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

<u>Finding/Recommendation</u>	<u>Current Status</u>	<u>Management's Explanation If Not Implemented</u>
NONE NOTED		

SNOOK INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

SCHEDULE OF REQUIRED RESPONSES TO SELECTED SCHOOL FIRST INDICATORS
AS OF AUGUST 31, 2017

Data Control Codes		Responses
SF2	Were there any disclosures in the Annual Financial Report and/or other sources of information concerning nonpayment of any terms of any debt agreement at fiscal year end?	No
SF4	Was there an unmodified opinion in the Annual Financial Report?	Yes
SF5	Did the Annual Financial Report disclose any instances of material weaknesses in internal controls over financial reporting and compliance for local, state, or federal funds?	No
SF6	Was there any disclosure in the Annual Financial Report of material noncompliance for grants, contracts, and laws related to local, state, or federal funds?	No
SF7	Did the school district make timely payments to the Teachers Retirement System (TRS), Texas Workforce Commission (TWC), Internal Revenue Service (IRS), and other governmental agencies?	Yes
SF8	Did the school district <u>not</u> receive an adjusted repayment schedule for more than one fiscal year for an over allocation of Foundation School Program (FSP) funds as a result of a financial hardship?	Yes
SF10	What was the total accumulated accretion on capital appreciation bonds (CABs) included in government-wide financial statements at fiscal year-end?	\$ --
SF11	Net pension assets (object 1920) at fiscal year-end	\$ --
SF12	Net pension liabilities (object 2540) at fiscal year-end	\$ 1,005,806

This page is left blank intentionally.

APPENDIX D

**FORM OF BOND COUNSEL'S
OPINION**



September 11, 2018

Orrick, Herrington & Sutcliffe LLP
300 W. 6th Street
Suite 1850
Austin, TX 78701
+1 512 582 6950
orrick.com

Snook Independent School District
Unlimited Tax School Building Bonds, Series 2018

We have acted as Bond Counsel to the Snook Independent School District (the "District") in connection with the issuance of \$7,350,000 aggregate principal amount of bonds designated as "Snook Independent School District Unlimited Tax School Building Bonds, Series 2018" (the "Bonds"). The Bonds are authorized by an order adopted by the Board of Trustees of the District on August 15, 2018 (the "Order"). Capitalized terms not otherwise defined herein shall have the meanings ascribed thereto in the Order.

In such connection, we have reviewed a transcript of certain certified proceedings pertaining to the issuance of the Bonds, including the Order, the tax certificate of the District dated the date hereof (the "Tax Certificate"), certificates of the District, and others, and such other documents, opinions and matters to the extent we deemed necessary to render the opinions set forth herein.

The opinions expressed herein are based on an analysis of existing laws, regulations, rulings and court decisions and cover certain matters not directly addressed by such authorities. Such opinions may be affected by actions taken or omitted or events occurring after the date hereof. We have not undertaken to determine, or to inform any person, whether any such actions are taken or omitted or events do occur or any other matters come to our attention after the date hereof. Accordingly, this letter speaks only as of its date and is not intended to, and may not, be relied upon or otherwise used in connection with any such actions, events or matters. Our engagement with respect to the Bonds has concluded with their issuance, and we disclaim any obligation to update this letter. We have assumed the genuineness of all documents and signatures presented to us (whether as originals or as copies) and the due and legal execution and delivery thereof by, and validity against, any parties other than the District. We have assumed, without undertaking to verify, the accuracy of the factual matters represented, warranted or certified in the documents referred to in the second paragraph hereof. Furthermore, we have assumed compliance with all covenants and agreements contained in the Order and the Tax Certificate, including (without limitation) covenants and agreements compliance with which is necessary to assure that future actions, omissions or events will not cause interest on the Bonds to be included in gross income for federal income tax purposes. We call attention to the fact that the rights and obligations under the Bonds, the Order and the Tax Certificate and their enforceability



September 11, 2018
Page 2

may be subject to bankruptcy, insolvency, receivership, reorganization, arrangement, fraudulent conveyance, moratorium and other laws relating to or affecting creditors' rights, to the application of equitable principles, to the exercise of judicial discretion in appropriate cases, and to the limitations on legal remedies against issuers in the State of Texas. We express no opinion with respect to any indemnification, contribution, liquidated damages, penalty (including any remedy deemed to constitute a penalty), right of set-off, arbitration, choice of law, choice of forum, choice of venue, non-exclusivity of remedies, waiver or severability provisions contained in the foregoing documents. Our services did not include financial or other non-legal advice. We have not assumed any responsibility with respect to the financial condition or capabilities of the District or the disclosure thereof in connection with the sale of the Bonds. Finally, our role in connection with the District's Official Statement prepared for use in connection with the sale of the Bonds has been limited as described therein.

Based on and subject to the foregoing, and in reliance thereon, as of the date hereof, we are of the following opinions:

- (1) The transcript of certified proceedings evidences complete legal authority for the issuance of the Bonds in full compliance with the Constitution and laws of the State of Texas presently in effect. The Bonds constitute valid and legally binding obligations of the District, and the Bonds have been authorized and delivered in accordance with law.
- (2) The Bonds are payable, both as to principal and interest, from the receipts of an annual ad valorem tax levied, without legal limit as to rate or amount, upon taxable property located within the District, which taxes have been pledged irrevocably to pay the principal of and interest on the Bonds.
- (3) Interest on the Bonds is excluded from gross income for federal income tax purposes under Section 103 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986. Interest on the Bonds is not a specific preference item for purposes of the federal alternative minimum tax. We express no opinion regarding other tax consequences related to the ownership or disposition of, or the amount, accrual or receipt of interest on, the Bonds.

Faithfully yours,

ORRICK, HERRINGTON & SUTCLIFFE LLP

